

OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE, OFFICIAL BID FORM  
and  
PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT

**\$6,600,000\***

**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
*(Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas)*

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds**  
**Series 2019**

*Bids Due*  
*January 14, 2019*  
*at 11:30 A.M. Central Time*

---

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.

*This Official Notice of Sale does not alone constitute an invitation for bids but is merely notice of sale of the Bonds defined and described herein. The invitation for bids on the Bonds is being made by means of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form and the Preliminary Official Statement.*

## OFFICIAL NOTICE OF SALE

**\$6,600,000\***

### SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas)

### UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019

#### THE SALE

**BONDS OFFERED FOR SALE AT COMPETITIVE BID:** The Board of Trustees (the "Board") of the Saint Jo Independent School District (the "District" or the "Issuer") is offering for sale at competitive bid its \$6,600,000\* Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"). Bidders may submit bids for the Bonds by either of the following methods:

- (1) Submit bids electronically as described below in "BIDS BY INTERNET;" or
- (2) Submit bids by facsimile as described below in "BIDS BY FACSIMILE."

**BIDS BY INTERNET:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by electronic media, as described below, by 11:30 A.M. Central Time, on January 14, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by internet **shall not** be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit an electronic bid must submit its electronic bid via the facilities of the i-Deal, LLC Parity System ("PARITY") and should, as a courtesy, register with PARITY by 10:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 14, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by internet.

In the event of a malfunction in the electronic bidding process, bidders may submit their bids by facsimile, as described below. Any bid received after the scheduled time for their receipt will not be accepted.

The official time for the receipt of bids shall be the time maintained by PARITY. All electronic bids shall be deemed to incorporate the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale, Official Bid Form, and the Preliminary Official Statement. To the extent that any instructions or directions set forth in PARITY conflict with this Official Notice of Sale, the terms of this Official Notice of Sale shall control. For further information about the PARITY System, potential bidders may contact i-Deal LLC at 1359 Broadway, 2<sup>nd</sup> Floor, New York, New York 10018, Telephone 212-849-5021.

An electronic bid made through the facilities of the PARITY System shall be deemed an irrevocable offer to purchase the Bonds on the terms provided in this Official Notice of Sale, and shall be binding upon the bidder as if made by a signed, sealed bid delivered to the Issuer. The Issuer shall not be responsible for any malfunction or mistake made by, or as a result of the use of PARITY, the use of such facilities being the sole risk of the prospective bidder.

**BIDS BY FACSIMILE:** Interested bidders may, at their option and risk, submit their bid by facsimile to the District's Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Attention: Mr. Doug Whitt at (214) 279-8683 by 11:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 14, 2019. Bidders submitting a bid by facsimile shall not be required to submit signed Official Bid Forms prior to the award. Any prospective bidder that intends to submit a bid by facsimile should, as a courtesy, submit an email message to [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com) by 10:30 A.M., Central Time, on January 14, 2019 indicating their intent to submit a bid by facsimile.

Neither the District nor SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is responsible for any failure of the Financial Advisor's or the bidder's fax machine. Bids received by facsimile after the bid deadline will not be accepted. Bidders who fax bids do so at their own risk. All such bids are binding on the bidder.

**PLACE AND TIME OF BID OPENING:** The bids for the Bonds will be publicly opened and read at the District at 11:30 A.M. Central Time, on January 14, 2019.

**AWARD OF THE BONDS:** The Board will take action to award the Bonds (or reject all bids) at a meeting to commence at 6:30 P.M., Central Time, on January 14, 2019.

#### THE BONDS

**DESCRIPTION:** The Bonds will be dated January 15, 2019 (the "Dated Date") with interest payable initially on August 15, 2019 and semiannually thereafter on each February 15 and August 15 until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued as fully registered obligations in book-entry form only and when issued will be registered in the name of Cede & Co., as nominee of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), New York, New York. DTC will act as securities depository (the "Securities Depository"). Book-entry interests in the Bonds will be made available for purchase in the principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Purchasers of the Bonds ("Beneficial Owners") will not receive physical delivery of certificates representing their interest in the Bonds purchased. So long as DTC or its nominee is the registered owner of the Bonds, the principal of and interest on the Bonds will be payable by BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas as Paying Agent/Registrar, to the Securities Depository, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to its Participants, which will in turn remit such principal and interest to the Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

*\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" herein.*

The Bonds will be stated to mature on February 15 in each of the following years in the following amounts:

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**

Maturity 2/15	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)	Maturity 2/15	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)
2020	\$125,000		2033	\$260,000	
2021	150,000		2034	275,000	
2022	180,000		2035	285,000	
2023	185,000		2036	295,000	
2024	195,000		2037	305,000	
2025	200,000		2038	320,000	
2026	205,000		2039	335,000	
2027	210,000		2040	345,000	
2028	215,000		2041	365,000	
2029	225,000		2042	380,000	
2030	235,000		2043	400,000	
2031	240,000		2044	420,000	
2032	250,000				

**ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS:** After selecting the winning bid, the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and the principal amortization schedule may be adjusted as determined by the District and its Financial Advisor in \$5,000 increments to reflect the actual interest rates and to create a substantially level debt service schedule for the District. Such adjustments will not change the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds by more than 10% from the amount set forth herein or change the principal amount due on the Bonds in any year by more than 20%. The dollar amount bid for the Bonds by the winning bidder will be adjusted proportionately to reflect any increase or decrease in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds finally determined to be issued. The District will use its best efforts to communicate to the winning bidder any such adjustment within four (4) hours after the opening of the bids. Purchaser’s compensation will be based upon the final par amount after any adjustment thereto, subsequent to the receipt and tabulation of the winning bid, within the aforementioned parameters.

In the event of any adjustment of the maturity schedule for the Bonds as described above, no rebidding or recalculation of the proposals submitted will be required or permitted. Any such adjustment of the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds and/or the maturity schedule for the Bonds made by the District or its Financial Advisor shall be subsequent to the award of the Bonds to the winning bidder as determined pursuant to “CONDITIONS OF THE SALE – BASIS OF AWARD” herein and shall not affect such determination. The winning bidder may not withdraw its bid as a result of any changes made within the aforementioned limits.

**SERIAL BONDS AND/OR TERM BONDS:** Bidders may provide that all of the Bonds be issued as serial maturities or may provide that any two or more consecutive annual principal amounts for maturities 2030 through 2044 be combined into one or more term bonds (the “Term Bonds”).

**MANDATORY SINKING FUND REDEMPTION:** If the successful bidder designates principal amounts of the Bonds to be combined into one or more Term Bonds, each such Term Bond will be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption commencing on February 15 of the first year which has been combined to form such Term Bond and continuing on February 15 in each year thereafter until the stated maturity date of that Term Bond. The amount redeemed in any year will be equal to the principal amount for such year set forth in the table above under the caption “MATURITY SCHEDULE” (subject to adjustment as provided in “ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS”). Term Bonds to be redeemed in any year by mandatory sinking fund redemption will be redeemed at par and will be selected by lot from among the Term Bonds then subject to redemption. The District, at its option, may credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement Term Bonds of the maturity then subject to redemption which have been purchased and canceled by the District or have been redeemed and not theretofore applied as a credit against any mandatory sinking fund redemption requirement.

**OPTIONAL REDEMPTION:** The District reserves the right to redeem the Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 in whole or in part, in principal amount of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a redemption price of par, plus accrued interest to the date fixed for redemption.

**QUALIFIED TAX-EXEMPT OBLIGATIONS:** The District will designate the Bonds as “qualified tax-exempt obligations” for financial institutions. (See “TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations” in the Official Statement.)

**AUTHORITY FOR ISSUANCE AND SECURITY FOR PAYMENT:** The Bonds are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, including Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1) of the Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 and an order to be adopted by the District’s Board on January 14, 2019 (the “Order”). The Bonds are direct obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from ad valorem taxes to be levied annually on all taxable property within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. (See “THE BONDS – Security” in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE:** The District has applied for and received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the payment of principal of and interest on the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See “THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM” in the Preliminary Official Statement.)

**PAYING AGENT/REGISTRAR:** The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to provide a Paying Agent/Registrar at all times while the Bonds are outstanding, and any Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States and any state and duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. The Paying Agent/Registrar will maintain the Security Register containing the names and addresses of the registered owners of the Bonds.

*\*Preliminary, subject to change. See “THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS” herein.*

In the Order the District retains the right to replace the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the Paying Agent/Registrar is replaced by the District, such Paying Agent/Registrar, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, is required to deliver the Security Register to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

In the event there is a change in the Paying Agent/Registrar, the District has agreed to notify each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class postage prepaid, at the address in the Security Register, stating the effective date of the change and the mailing address of the successor Paying Agent/Registrar.

**BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM:** The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of DTC with respect to the issuance of the Bonds. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" in the Preliminary Official Statement.

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT AND OTHER TERMS AND COVENANTS IN THE ORDER:** Further details regarding the Bonds and certain covenants of the District contained in the Order are set forth in the Preliminary Official Statement, to which reference is made for all purposes.

## CONDITIONS OF THE SALE

**TYPES OF BIDS AND INTEREST RATES:** The Bonds will be sold in one block, on an "All or None" basis, and at a price of not less than their par value, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from the Dated Date of the Bonds to the date of Initial Delivery (defined herein) of the Bonds. **No bid producing a cash premium on the Bonds that results in a dollar price of less than \$104.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered; provided, however, that any bid is subject to adjustment as described under the caption "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS."** Bidders are invited to name the rate(s) of interest to be borne by the Bonds, provided that each rate bid must be in a multiple of 1/8 of 1% or 1/20 of 1% and the net effective interest rate for the Bonds (calculated in the manner required by Chapter 1204, as amended, Texas Government Code) must not exceed 15%. **The highest rate bid may not exceed the lowest rate bid by more than 300 basis points (or 3.00% in rate). No limitation is imposed upon bidders as to the number of rates or changes which may be used.** All Bonds of one stated maturity must bear one and the same rate. No bids involving supplemental interest rates will be considered.

**BASIS OF AWARD:** The sale of the Bonds will be awarded to the bidder making a bid that conforms to the specifications herein and which produces the **lowest True Interest Cost (defined herein) rate on the Bonds to the District.** The "True Interest Cost" rate is that rate which, when used to compute the total present value as of the **Dated Date** of all debt service payments on the Bonds on the basis of semi-annual compounding, produces an amount equal to the sum of the par value of the Bonds plus the premium bid (but not interest accrued from the Dated Date to the date of their Initial Delivery). In the event of a bidder's error in interest cost rate calculations, the interest rates, and premium set forth in the Official Bid Form will be considered as the intended bid.

In order to provide the District with information required to enable it to comply with certain conditions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code") relating to the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from the gross income of their owners, the Purchaser will be required to complete, execute, and deliver to the District (on or before the date of Initial Delivery of the Bonds) a certification as to their "issue price" (the "Issue Price Certificate") in the form and to the effect attached hereto or accompanying this Official Notice of Sale, subject to the conditions set forth in "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" below.

### ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE:

(a) The winning bidder shall assist the District in establishing the issue price of the Bonds and shall execute and deliver to the District by the date of Initial Delivery an "issue price" or similar certificate setting forth the reasonably expected initial offering price to the public, together with the supporting pricing wires or equivalent communications, such issue price certificate substantially in the form attached hereto, with such modifications as may be appropriate or necessary, in the reasonable judgment of the winning bidder, the District, and Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, the District's Bond Counsel (but not to the extent that would preclude the establishment of issue price of the Bonds under applicable federal regulations). All actions to be taken by the District under this Official Notice of Sale to establish the issue price of the Bonds may be taken on behalf of the District by the District's Financial Advisor and any notice or report to be provided to the District may be provided to the District's Financial Advisor.

(b) The District intends that the provisions of Treasury Regulation Section 1.148-1(f)(3)(i) (defining "competitive sale" for purposes of establishing the issue price of the Bonds) will apply to the initial sale of the Bonds (the "competitive sale requirements") because:

- (1) the District shall disseminate this Official Notice of Sale to potential underwriters (defined below) in a manner that is reasonably designed to reach potential underwriters;
- (2) all bidders shall have an equal opportunity to bid;
- (3) the District may receive bids from at least three underwriters of municipal bonds who have established industry reputations for underwriting new issuances of municipal bonds; and
- (4) the District anticipates awarding the sale of the Bonds to the bidder who submits a firm offer to purchase the Bonds at the highest price (or lowest interest cost), as set forth in this Official Notice of Sale.

Any bid submitted pursuant to this Official Notice of Sale shall be considered a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds, as specified in the bid.

(c) In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, the District shall so advise the winning bidder. In such event, the District intends to treat the initial offering price to the public (defined below) as of the sale date (defined below) of each maturity of the Bonds as the issue price of that maturity (the "hold-the-offering-price rule"). The District shall promptly advise the winning bidder, at or before the time of award of the Bonds, if the competitive sale requirements were not satisfied, in which case the hold-the-offering-price rule shall apply to the Bonds. **Bids will not be subject to cancellation in the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied and the hold-the-offering-price rule applies.** In the event that the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, resulting in the application of the hold-the-offering price rule, the issue price certificate shall be modified as necessary in the reasonable judgment of Bond Counsel and the District.

(d) By submitting a bid, the winning bidder shall (i) confirm that the underwriters have offered or will offer the Bonds to the public on or before the date of award at the offering price or prices (the "initial offering price"), or at the corresponding yield or yields, set forth in the bid submitted by the winning bidder and (ii) agree, on behalf of the underwriters participating in the purchase of the Bonds, that the underwriters will neither offer nor sell unsold Bonds of any maturity to which the hold-the-offering-price rule applies to any person at a price that is higher than the initial offering price to the public during the period starting on the sale date and ending on the earlier of the following:

- (1) the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date; or
- (2) the date on which the underwriters have sold at least 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public.

The winning bidder shall promptly advise the District when the underwriters have sold 10% of that maturity of the Bonds to the public at a price that is no higher than the initial offering price to the public, if that occurs prior to the close of the fifth (5<sup>th</sup>) business day after the sale date.

(e) If the competitive sale requirements are not satisfied, then until the 10% test has been satisfied as to each maturity of the Bonds, the winning bidder agrees to promptly report to the District the prices at which the unsold Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public. That reporting obligation shall continue, whether or not the date of Initial Delivery has occurred, until the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or until all Bonds of that maturity have been sold. The 10% test shall be considered satisfied with respect to a maturity when at least 10% of the Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public at a particular price.

(f) The District acknowledges that, in making the representation set forth above, the winning bidder will rely on (i) the agreement of each underwriter to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in an agreement among underwriters and the related pricing wires, (ii) in the event a selling group has been created in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each dealer who is a member of the selling group to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in a selling group agreement and the related pricing wires, and (iii) in the event that an underwriter is a party to a retail distribution agreement that was employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, the agreement of each broker-dealer that is a party to such agreement to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, as set forth in the retail distribution agreement and the related pricing wires. The District further acknowledges that each underwriter shall be solely liable for its failure to comply with its agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule and that no underwriter shall be liable for the failure of any other underwriter, or of any dealer who is a member of a selling group, or of any broker-dealer that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to comply with its corresponding agreement regarding the hold-the-offering-price rule as applicable to the Bonds.

(g) By submitting a bid, each bidder confirms that: (i) any agreement among underwriters, any selling group agreement and each retail distribution agreement (to which the bidder is a party) relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter, each dealer who is a member of the selling group, and each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement, as applicable, to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) to comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder and as set forth in the related pricing wires, and (ii) any agreement among underwriters relating to the initial sale of the Bonds to the public, together with the related pricing wires, contains or will contain language obligating each underwriter that is a party to a retail distribution agreement to be employed in connection with the initial sale of the Bonds to the public to require each broker-dealer that is a party to such retail distribution agreement to (A) report the prices at which it sells to the public the unsold Bonds of each maturity allotted to it until it is notified by the winning bidder or such underwriter that either the 10% test has been satisfied as to the Bonds of that maturity or all Bonds of that maturity have been sold to the public and (B) comply with the hold-the-offering-price rule, if applicable, in each case if and for so long as directed by the winning bidder or such underwriter and as set forth in the related pricing wires.

(h) Sales of any Bonds to any person that is a related party (defined below) to an underwriter shall not constitute sales to the public for purposes of this Official Notice of Sale. Further, for purposes of this section of the Official Notice of Sale entitled "ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE":

- (1) "public" means any person other than an underwriter or a related party,
- (2) "underwriter" means (A) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the District (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public and (B) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (A) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the public),
- (3) a purchaser of any of the Bonds is a "related party" to an underwriter if the underwriter and the purchaser are subject, directly or indirectly, to (i) at least 50% common ownership of the voting power or the total value of their stock, if both entities are corporations (including direct ownership by one corporation of another), (ii) more than 50% common ownership of their capital interests or profits interests, if both entities are partnerships (including direct ownership by one partnership of another), or (iii) more than 50% common ownership of the value of the outstanding stock of the corporation or the capital interests or profit interests of the partnership, as applicable, if one entity is a corporation and the other entity is a partnership (including direct ownership of the applicable stock or interests by one entity of the other), and
- (4) "sale date" means the date that the Bonds are awarded by the District to the winning bidder.

**GOOD FAITH DEPOSIT:** A bank cashier's check, payable to the order of "Saint Jo Independent School District", in the amount of \$132,000 which is 2% of the proposed par value of the Bonds (the "Good Faith Deposit"), is required to accompany any bid. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser (as defined herein) will be retained uncashed by the District pending the Purchaser's compliance with the terms of its bid and this Official Notice of Sale. In the event the Purchaser should fail or refuse to take up and pay for the Bonds in accordance with its bid, then said check shall be cashed and accepted by the District as full and complete liquidated damages. The Good Faith Deposit may accompany the Official Bid Form or it may be submitted separately; however, if submitted separately, it shall be made available to the District prior to the opening of the bids, and shall be accompanied by instructions from the bank on which it is drawn which authorizes its use as a Good Faith Deposit by the Purchaser who shall be named in such instructions. **The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial**

**Delivery.** No interest will be allowed on the Good Faith Deposit. Checks accompanying bids other than the winning bid will be returned promptly after the bids are opened, and an award of the Bonds has been made by the District.

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD — DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTY FORM:**

New obligation of the District to receive information from winning bidder if bidder is not a publicly traded business entity (a “Privately Held Bidder”). Effective January 1, 2018, pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2252.908 (the “Interested Party Disclosure Act”), the District may not award the Bonds to a winning bidder which is a Privately Held Bidder unless such party submits a Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the “Disclosure Form”) to the District as prescribed by the Texas Ethics Commission (“TEC”). In the event that a Privately Held Bidder’s bid for the Bonds is the best bid received, the District, acting through its financial advisor, will promptly notify the winning Privately Held Bidder. That notification will serve as the District’s conditional verbal acceptance of the bid, and will obligate the winning Privately Held Bidder to establish (unless such winning Privately Held Bidder has previously so established) an account with the TEC, and promptly file a completed Disclosure Form, as described below, in order to allow the District to complete the award.

Process for completing the Disclosure Form. For purposes of illustration, the Disclosure Form is attached hereto, and reference should be made to such form for the following information needed to complete it: (a) item 2 – name of the governmental entity (Saint Jo Independent School District) and (b) item 3 – the identification number assigned to this contract by the District (0001) and description of the goods or services (Purchase of the Saint Jo Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019). The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the rules adopted by the TEC with respect thereto (the “Disclosure Rules”) require a non-publicly traded business entity contracting with the District to complete the Disclosure Form electronically at <https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/main/file.htm>, print, sign, and deliver, in physical form, the certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC’s “electronic portal” to the District. The Disclosure Form must be sent by email, to the District’s financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com), as soon as possible following the notification of conditional verbal acceptance and prior to the final written award. Upon receipt of the final written award, the Disclosure Form with original signatures must be submitted by mail to Clay Binford, c/o Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, 300 Convent Street, Suite 2100, San Antonio, Texas 78205.

Preparations for completion, and the significance of, the reported information. In accordance with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the information reported by the winning Privately Held Bidder must be declared by an authorized agent of the Privately Held Winning Bidder. No exceptions may be made to that requirement. The Interested Party Disclosure Act and the Disclosure Form provides that such acknowledgment is made “under penalty of perjury.” Consequently, a winning Privately Held Bidder should take appropriate steps prior to completion of the Disclosure Form to familiarize itself with the Interested Party Disclosure Act, the Disclosure Rules and the Disclosure Form. Time will be of the essence in submitting the form to the District, and no final award will be made by the District regarding the sale of the Bonds until a completed Disclosure Form is received. If applicable, the District reserves the right to reject any bid that does not satisfy the requirement of a completed Disclosure Form, as described herein. Neither the District nor its consultants have the ability to verify the information included in a Disclosure Form, and neither party has an obligation nor undertakes responsibility for advising any bidder with respect to (1) the bidder’s obligation to submit the Disclosure Form or (2) the proper completion of the Disclosure Form. Consequently, an entity intending to bid on the Bonds should consult its own advisors to the extent it deems necessary and be prepared to submit the completed form, if required, promptly upon notification from the District that its bid is the conditional winning bid. Instructional videos on logging in and creating a certificate are provided on the TEC’s website at [https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm).

**ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD – COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85TH TEXAS LEGISLATURE:**

Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby verifies that it and its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, do not boycott Israel and, to the extent this Notice of Sale and Official Bid Form is a contract for goods or services, will not boycott Israel during the term of this agreement. The foregoing verification is made solely to comply with Section 2270.002, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law. As used in the foregoing verification, ‘boycott Israel’ means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes. Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands ‘affiliate’ to mean an entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the bidder and exists to make a profit.

Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, hereby represents that neither it nor any of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates is a company identified on a list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts under Section 2252.153 or Section 2270.0201, Texas Government Code, and posted on any of the following pages of such officer’s internet website:

<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/sudan-list.pdf>,  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/iran-list.pdf>, or  
<https://comptroller.texas.gov/purchasing/docs/fto-list.pdf>.

The foregoing representation is made solely to comply with Section 2252.152, Texas Government Code, and to the extent such Section does not contravene applicable Federal law and excludes the bidder and each of its parent company, wholly- or majority-owned subsidiaries, and other affiliates, if any, that the United States government has affirmatively declared to be excluded from its federal sanctions regime relating to Sudan or Iran or any federal sanctions regime relating to a foreign terrorist organization. Each bidder, through submittal of an executed Official Bid Form, understands “affiliate” to mean any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with the bidder and exists to make a profit.

**IMPACT OF BIDDING SYNDICATE ON AWARD:** For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

**OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

To assist the winning bidder (the “Initial Purchaser” or “Purchaser”) in complying with Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the “Rule”), of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (“SEC”), the Issuer and the Initial Purchaser contract and agree, by the submission and acceptance of the winning bid, as follows:

**COMPLIANCE WITH RULE 15c2-12 OF THE SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION:** The Issuer has approved and authorized distribution of the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement for dissemination to potential purchasers of the Bonds, but

does not presently intend to prepare any other document or version thereof for such purpose, except as described below. Accordingly, the Issuer deems the accompanying Preliminary Official Statement to be final as of its date, within the meaning of the Rule, except for information relating to the offering prices, interest rates, final debt service schedule, selling compensation, identity of the Purchaser and other similar information, terms and provisions to be specified in the competitive bidding process. The Initial Purchaser shall be responsible for promptly informing the Issuer of the initial offering yields of the Bonds.

Thereafter, the Issuer will complete and authorize distribution of the final Official Statement, being a modification of the Preliminary Official Statement, identifying the Initial Purchaser and containing such omitted information. The Issuer does not intend to amend or supplement the Official Statement otherwise, except to take into account certain subsequent events, if any, as described below. By delivering the final Official Statement or any amendment or supplement thereto in the requested quantity to the Initial Purchaser on or after the sale date, the Issuer intends the same to be final as of such date, within the meaning of the Rule. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Issuer makes no representation concerning the absence of material misstatements or omissions from the Official Statement, except only as and to the extent under "CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT" as described below.

**FINAL OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** The Issuer will furnish to the Purchaser, within seven (7) business days after the sale date, an aggregate maximum of one hundred (100) copies of the Official Statement (and one hundred (100) copies of any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto), together with information regarding interest rates, and other terms relating to the reoffering of the Bonds. In addition, the District agrees to provide, or cause to be provided, to the Purchaser, the Preliminary Official Statement and the Official Statement and any amendments or supplements thereto in a "designated electronic format" (or printed format with respect to the final Official Statement) as may be required for the Purchaser to comply with the Rule or the rules of the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The District consents to the distribution of such documents in a "designated electronic format." Upon receipt, the Purchaser shall promptly file the Official Statement with the MSRB in accordance with the applicable MSRB rules. The Purchaser may arrange at its own expense to have the Official Statement reproduced and printed if it requires more copies and may also arrange, at its own expense and responsibility, for completion and perfection of the first or cover page of the Official Statement so as to reflect interest rates and other terms and information related to the reoffering of the Bonds. The Purchaser will be responsible for providing information concerning the Issuer and the Bonds to subsequent purchasers of the Bonds, and the Issuer will undertake no responsibility for providing such information other than to make the Official Statement available to the Purchaser as provided herein. The Issuer's obligation to supplement the Official Statement to correct key representations determined to be omitted or materially misleading, after the date of the Official Statement, shall terminate 25 days after the sale date.

**CHANGES TO OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** If, subsequent to the date of the Official Statement, the Issuer learns, through the ordinary course of business and without undertaking any investigation or examination for such purposes, or is notified by the Initial Purchaser of any adverse event which causes the Official Statement to be incomplete or materially misleading, and unless the Initial Purchaser elects to terminate its obligation to purchase the Bonds, as described below under "DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS – CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY," the Issuer will promptly prepare and supply to the Initial Purchaser an appropriate amendment or supplement to the Official Statement in a "designated electronic format" satisfactory to the Initial Purchaser.

**CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT:** At the time of payment for and delivery of the hereinafter defined Initial Bond ("Initial Delivery"), the Initial Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the Issuer, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the Issuer contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of Initial Delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the Issuer and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the Issuer, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the Issuer believes to be reliable and the Issuer has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the Issuer, since August 31, 2017, the date of the last financial statements of the Issuer appearing in the Official Statement. The Official Statement and this Official Notice of Sale will be approved as to form and content and the use thereof in the offering of the Bonds will be authorized, ratified and approved by the Board on the date of sale, and the Initial Purchaser will be furnished, upon request, at the time of payment for and the Initial Delivery of the Bonds, a certified copy of such approval, duly executed by the proper officials of the Issuer.

**CONTINUING DISCLOSURE AGREEMENT:** The District has agreed in the Order to provide certain periodic information and notices of certain events in accordance with the Rule, as described in the Official Statement under "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION". The Purchaser's obligation to accept and pay for the Bonds is conditioned upon delivery to the Purchaser or its agent of a certified copy of the Order containing the agreement described under such heading.

**COMPLIANCE WITH PRIOR UNDERTAKINGS:** The District has not previously entered into a continuing disclosure agreement in accordance with the Rule.

## **DELIVERY AND ACCOMPANYING DOCUMENTS**

**INITIAL DELIVERY OF INITIAL BOND:** Initial Delivery will be accomplished by the issuance of one or more fully registered Bonds in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to the Purchaser (the "Initial Bond" or "Initial Bonds"), signed by the duly appointed officers of the Board, by their manual or facsimile signatures, approved by the Texas Attorney General, and registered and manually signed by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. Initial Delivery will be at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar. Upon delivery of the Initial Bonds, they shall be immediately canceled and one definitive Bond for each maturity in the aggregate principal amount of the Bonds payable to Cede & Co. will be delivered to DTC in connection with DTC's Book-Entry-Only System. Payment for the Bonds must be made in immediately available funds for unconditional credit to the District, or as otherwise directed by the District. The Purchaser will be given six business days' notice of the time fixed for delivery of the Bonds. It is anticipated that the delivery of the Initial Bond can be made on or about February 12, 2019, but if for any reason the District is unable to make delivery by March 12, 2019, then the District shall immediately contact the Purchaser and offer to allow the Purchaser to extend its obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds an additional thirty days. If the Purchaser does not elect to extend its offer within six days thereafter, then its Good Faith Deposit will be returned, and both the District and the Purchaser shall be relieved of any further obligation. In no event shall the District be liable for any damages by reason of its failure to deliver the Bonds, provided that such failure is due to circumstances beyond the District's reasonable control.

**CUSIP NUMBERS:** It is anticipated that CUSIP identification numbers will be printed on the Bonds, but neither the failure to print such number on any Bond nor any error with respect thereto shall constitute cause for a failure or refusal by the Initial Purchaser to accept delivery of and pay for the Bonds in accordance with the terms of the Official Bid Form and this Official Notice of Sale. All expenses in relation to the printing of CUSIP numbers on the Bonds shall be paid by the Issuer; however, the CUSIP Service Bureau's charge for the assignment of the numbers shall be paid by the Initial Purchaser.

**CONDITIONS TO DELIVERY:** The obligation to take up and pay for the Bonds is subject to the following conditions: the issuance of an approving opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas, the Initial Purchaser's receipt of the legal opinion of Bond Counsel and the certificate regarding the Official Statement, and the non-occurrence of the events described below under the caption "NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE". In addition, if the Issuer fails to comply with its obligations described under "OFFICIAL STATEMENT" above, the Initial Purchaser may terminate its contract to purchase the Bonds by delivering written notice to the Issuer within five (5) days thereafter.

**NO MATERIAL ADVERSE CHANGE:** The obligations of the Initial Purchaser to take up and pay for the Bonds, and of the Issuer to deliver the Initial Bonds, are subject to the condition that, up to the time of delivery of and receipt of payment for the Initial Bonds, there shall have been no material adverse change in the affairs of the Issuer subsequent to the date of sale from that set forth in the Official Statement, as it may have been finalized, supplemented or amended through the date of Initial Delivery.

**LEGAL OPINIONS:** The District will furnish the Purchaser a complete transcript of proceedings incident to the authorization and issuance of the Bonds, including the unqualified approving legal opinion of the Attorney General of the State of Texas as to the Bonds, to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District, and based upon examination of such transcript of proceedings, the approving legal opinion of Bond Counsel, regarding the legality and validity of the Bonds issued in compliance with the provisions of the Order. (See "LITIGATION" and "LEGAL MATTERS" in the Official Statement and "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel" attached to the Official Statement.)

**CHANGE IN TAX-EXEMPT STATUS:** At any time before the Bonds are tendered for Initial Delivery to the Initial Purchaser, the Initial Purchaser may withdraw its bid if the interest on obligations such as the Bonds shall be declared to be includable in the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Code, of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, either by Treasury regulations, by ruling or administrative guidance of the Internal Revenue Service, by a decision of any federal court, or by the terms of any federal income tax legislation enacted subsequent to the date of this Official Notice of Sale.

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

**RATING:** The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P"), based upon the Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" in the Official Statement.) The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A" by S&P. There is no assurance that such rating will continue for any given period of time or that it will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by such rating company, if in the judgment of said rating company, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of such rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds. Neither the District nor the Purchaser has undertaken any responsibility to advise owners of the Bonds of any lowering or withdrawal of such rating.

**REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE:** No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the SEC under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon exemptions provided in such Act. The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon exemptions contained therein, nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The Issuer assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The Issuer agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and expense and within reasonable limits, in registering or qualifying the Bonds, or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary, but the District will in no instance execute a general consent to service of process in any state in which the Bonds are offered for sale.

**ADDITIONAL COPIES:** Subject to the limitations described herein, additional copies of this Official Notice of Sale, the Official Bid Form, and the Official Statement may be obtained from SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024.

On the date of the sale, the Board will, in the Order, approve the form and content of the Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, and authorize its further use in the reoffering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

*/s/ Leeton Phillips*

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

*/s/ Rebecca Harris*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

Dated: January 7, 2019



**OFFICIAL BID FORM**

President and Board of Trustees  
 Saint Jo Independent School District  
 206 West Evans Street  
 Saint Jo, Texas 76265

January 14, 2019

Ladies & Gentlemen:

Reference is made to your Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement dated January 7, 2019 of \$6,600,000\* SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds"), both of which constitute a part hereof (the terms of which are hereto agreed as evidenced by our submission of this bid).

For your legally issued Bonds, as described in said Official Notice of Sale and Preliminary Official Statement, we will pay you a price of par value thereof plus accrued interest from their date to the date of delivery to us, plus a cash premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (no bid producing a cash premium that results in a dollar price of less than \$104.50 nor greater than \$110.00 will be considered) for Bonds maturing and bearing interest as follows:

Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)	Maturity (2/15)	Principal Amount*	Interest Rate (%)
2020	\$125,000	_____	2033	\$260,000	_____
2021	150,000	_____	2034	275,000	_____
2022	180,000	_____	2035	285,000	_____
2023	185,000	_____	2036	295,000	_____
2024	195,000	_____	2037	305,000	_____
2025	200,000	_____	2038	320,000	_____
2026	205,000	_____	2039	335,000	_____
2027	210,000	_____	2040	345,000	_____
2028	215,000	_____	2041	365,000	_____
2029	225,000	_____	2042	380,000	_____
2030	235,000	_____	2043	400,000	_____
2031	240,000	_____	2044	420,000	_____
2032	250,000	_____			

(Interest to Accrue from the Dated Date)

Of the principal maturities set forth in the table above, we have created term bonds for stated maturities \_\_\_\_ through \_\_\_\_ (the "Term Bonds") as indicated in the following table (which may include multiple Term Bonds, one Term Bond or no Term Bond if none is indicated). For those years which have been combined into a Term Bond, the principal amount shown in the table above will be the mandatory sinking fund redemption amounts in such years except that the amount shown in the year of the Term Bond maturity date will mature in such year. The Term Bonds created are as follows:

Term Bond Maturity Date	Year of First Mandatory Redemption	Principal Amount of Term Bond	Interest Rate
February 15	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____

Our calculation (which is not a part of this bid) of the interest cost in accordance with the above bid is:

TRUE INTEREST COST \_\_\_\_\_ %

By accepting this bid, we understand the District will provide the copies of the Official Statement and of any amendments or supplements thereto in accordance with the Official Notice of Sale.

The Initial Bond(s) shall be registered in the name of \_\_\_\_\_ ("Purchaser"). We will advise DTC of registration instructions at least five business days prior to the date set for Initial Delivery. It is the obligation of the Purchaser of the Bonds to complete the DTC Eligibility Questionnaire.

Cashier's Check of the \_\_\_\_\_ (bank), \_\_\_\_\_ (location), in the amount of \$132,000 which represents our Good Faith Deposit is attached hereto or has been made available to you prior to the opening of the bid, in accordance with the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale and the Preliminary Official Statement. The Good Faith Deposit of the Purchaser will be returned to the Purchaser on the date of Initial Delivery upon completion of the closing.

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS – ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.

We agree to accept delivery of the Initial Bond(s) through DTC and make payment for the Initial Bond(s) in immediately available funds at BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, no later than 10:00 A.M., Central Time, on February 12, 2019, or thereafter on the date the Initial Bond(s) are tendered for delivery, pursuant to the terms set forth in the Official Notice of Sale.

The Issuer will consider any bid submitted pursuant to the Notice of Sale relating to the Bonds to be a firm offer for the purchase of the Bonds.

The undersigned agrees to the provisions of the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" and, as evidence thereof agrees to complete, execute and deliver to the District by the date of delivery of the Bonds, a certificate relating to the "issue price" of the Bonds in the form and to the effect attached to or accompanying the Official Notice of Sale, with such changes thereto as may be acceptable to the District (as provided under "CONDITIONS OF THE SALE - ESTABLISHMENT OF ISSUE PRICE" in the Official Notice of Sale).

Through submittal of this executed Official Bid Form, the undersigned verifies that it does not and will not "boycott Israel" and is not on the Texas Comptroller's list concerning "foreign terrorist organizations" as prepared and maintained thereby under applicable Texas law, all as more fully provided in the Official Notice of Sale under the heading "ADDITIONAL CONDITION OF AWARD - COMPLIANCE WITH H.B. 89 AND S.B. 252, 85th TEXAS LEGISLATURE".

For purposes of contracting for the sale of the Bonds, the entity signing the bid form as Purchaser shall be solely responsible for the payment of the purchase price of the Bonds. The Purchaser may serve as a syndicate manager and contract under a separate agreement with other syndicate members. However, the District is not a party to that agreement and any information provided regarding syndicate managers would be for informational purposes only.

Upon notification of conditional verbal acceptance and if required, the undersigned will complete an electronic form of the Certificate of Interested Parties Form 1295 (the "Disclosure Form") through the Texas Ethics Commission's (the "TEC") electronic portal and the resulting certified Disclosure Form that is generated by the TEC's electronic portal will be printed, signed, notarized and sent by email to the District's financial advisor at [dwhitt@samcocapital.com](mailto:dwhitt@samcocapital.com). The undersigned understands that the failure to provide the certified Disclosure Form, if required, will prohibit the District from providing final written award of the enclosed bid.

Respectfully submitted,

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Purchaser)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature - Title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Telephone)

**ACCEPTANCE CLAUSE**

THE FOREGOING BID IS IN ALL THINGS HEREBY ACCEPTED this January 14, 2019 by Order of the Board of Trustees of the Saint Jo Independent School District.

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

# CERTIFICATE OF INTERESTED PARTIES

FORM 1295

1 of 1

Complete Nos. 1 - 4 and 6 if there are interested parties.  
 Complete Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, and 6 if there are no interested parties.

**OFFICE USE ONLY  
 CERTIFICATION OF FILING**

**1 Name of business entity filing form, and the city, state and country of the business entity's place of business.**

**2 Name of governmental entity or state agency that is a party to the contract for which the form is being filed.**

Saint Jo Independent School District

**3 Provide the identification number used by the governmental entity or state agency to track or identify the contract, and provide a description of the services, goods, or other property to be provided under the contract.**

0001

Purchase of the Saint Jo Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019

4	Name of Interested Party	City, State, Country (place of business)	Nature of interest (check applicable)	
			Controlling	Intermediary

**5 Check only if there is NO Interested Party.**

**6 UNSWORN DECLARATION**

My name is \_\_\_\_\_, and my date of birth is \_\_\_\_\_.

My address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.  
(street) (city) (state) (zip code) (country)

I declare under penalty of perjury that the foregoing is true and correct.

Executed in \_\_\_\_\_ County, State of \_\_\_\_\_, on the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.  
(month) (year)

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Signature of authorized agent of contracting business entity  
 (Declarant)

**\$6,600,000\***  
**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**ISSUE PRICE CERTIFICATE**

The undersigned, on behalf of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_  
 (“\_\_\_\_\_”), hereby certifies as set forth below with respect to the sale of the above-captioned obligations (the “Bonds”) of the Saint Jo Independent School District (the “Issuer”).

**1. Reasonably Expected Initial Offering Price.**

(a) As of the Sale Date, the reasonably expected initial offering prices of the Bonds to the Public by \_\_\_\_\_ are the prices listed in Schedule A (the “Expected Offering Prices”). The Expected Offering Prices are the prices for the Maturities of the Bonds used by \_\_\_\_\_ in formulating its bid to purchase the Bonds. Attached as Schedule B is a true and correct copy of the bid provided by \_\_\_\_\_ to purchase the Bonds.

(b) \_\_\_\_\_ was not given the opportunity to review other bids prior to submitting its bid.

(c) The bid submitted by \_\_\_\_\_ constituted a firm offer to purchase the Bonds.

**2. Defined Terms.**

(a) *Maturity* means Bonds with the same credit and payment terms. Bonds with different maturity dates, or Bonds with the same maturity date but different stated interest rates, are treated as separate Maturities.

(b) *Public* means any person (including an individual, trust, estate, partnership, association, company, or corporation) other than an Underwriter or a related party to an Underwriter. The term “related party” for purposes of this certificate generally means any two or more persons who have greater than 50 percent common ownership, directly or indirectly.

(c) *Sale Date* means the first day on which there is a binding contract in writing for the sale of a Maturity of the Bonds. The Sale Date of the Bonds is January 14, 2019.

(d) *Underwriter* means (i) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract with the Issuer (or with the lead underwriter to form an underwriting syndicate) to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public, and (ii) any person that agrees pursuant to a written contract directly or indirectly with a person described in clause (i) of this paragraph to participate in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public (including a member of a selling group or a party to a retail distribution agreement participating in the initial sale of the Bonds to the Public).

\_\_\_\_\_  
\*Preliminary. Subject to change.

The representations set forth in this certificate are limited to factual matters only. Nothing in this certificate represents \_\_\_\_\_ interpretation of any laws, including specifically sections 103 and 148 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Treasury Regulations thereunder. The undersigned understands that the foregoing information will be relied upon by the Issuer with respect to certain of the representations set forth in the Tax Certificate with respect to the Bonds and with respect to compliance with the federal income tax rules affecting the Bonds, and by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP in connection with rendering its opinion that the interest on the Bonds is excluded from gross income for federal income tax purposes, the preparation of the Internal Revenue Service Form 8038-G, and other federal income tax advice that it may give to the Issuer from time to time relating to the Bonds.

\_\_\_\_\_  
By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

**SCHEDULE A**  
**EXPECTED OFFERING PRICES**

**SCHEDULE B**  
**COPY OF UNDERWRITER'S BID**

**BOND YEARS**

**\$6,600,000\***

**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

(Montague & Cooke Counties, Texas)

**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

Dated: January 15, 2019

Due: February 15

Year	Amount*	Bond Years*	
		Bond Years	Cumulative Bond Years
2020	\$ 125,000	126.0416	126.0416
2021	150,000	301.2500	427.2916
2022	180,000	541.4999	968.7915
2023	185,000	741.5416	1,710.3331
2024	195,000	976.6249	2,686.9581
2025	200,000	1,201.6666	3,888.6247
2026	205,000	1,436.7083	5,325.3329
2027	210,000	1,681.7499	7,007.0829
2028	215,000	1,936.7916	8,943.8744
2029	225,000	2,251.8749	11,195.7494
2030	235,000	2,586.9583	13,782.7076
2031	240,000	2,881.9999	16,664.7075
2032	250,000	3,252.0833	19,916.7908
2033	260,000	3,642.1666	23,558.9574
2034	275,000	4,127.2916	27,686.2490
2035	285,000	4,562.3749	32,248.6239
2036	295,000	5,017.4582	37,266.0821
2037	305,000	5,492.5416	42,758.6237
2038	320,000	6,082.6666	48,841.2902
2039	335,000	6,702.7916	55,544.0818
2040	345,000	7,247.8749	62,791.9567
2041	365,000	8,033.0415	70,824.9982
2042	380,000	8,743.1665	79,568.1647
2043	400,000	9,603.3332	89,171.4979
2044	420,000	10,503.4999	99,674.9978

Average Maturity = 15.102

\*Preliminary, subject to change. See "THE BONDS - ADJUSTMENT OF PRINCIPAL AMOUNT AND MATURITY SCHEDULE FOR THE BONDS" in the Official Notice of Sale and Bidding Instructions.



**PRELIMINARY OFFICIAL STATEMENT**

**Dated: January 7, 2019**

**NEW ISSUE: BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY**

*In the opinion of Bond Counsel (defined below), assuming continuing compliance by the District (defined below) after the date of initial delivery of the Bonds (defined below) with certain covenants contained in the Order (defined below) and subject to the matters set forth under "TAX MATTERS" herein, interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) will be excludable from the gross income of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date of initial delivery of the Bonds, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. See "TAX MATTERS" herein.*

*The District will designate the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions.*

**\$6,600,000\***

**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**(A political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas)**

**Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019**

**Dated Date: January 15, 2019**

**Due: February 15, as shown on the inside cover page**

The Saint Jo Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") are being issued pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 and the order (the "Order") to be adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on January 14, 2019. The Bonds are payable as to principal and interest from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied annually, without legal limit as to rate or amount, against all taxable property located within the Saint Jo Independent School District (the "District"). The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency for the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

Interest on the Bonds will accrue from the Dated Date specified above and will be payable on February 15 and August 15 of each year, commencing August 15, 2019, until stated maturity or prior redemption. The Bonds will be issued in fully registered form in principal denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof. Principal of the Bonds will be payable by the Paying Agent/Registrar, which initially is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas (the "Paying Agent/Registrar"), upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds for payment. Interest on the Bonds is payable by check dated as of the interest payment date and mailed by the Paying Agent/Registrar to the registered owners as shown on the records of the Paying Agent/Registrar on the close of business as of the last business day of the month next preceding each interest payment date (the "Record Date").

The District intends to utilize the Book-Entry-Only System of The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). Such Book-Entry-Only System will affect the method and timing of payment and the method of transfer of the Bonds. (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM").

Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) designing, constructing, renovating, improving, acquiring, and equipping school facilities (and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities), the purchase of the necessary sites for school facilities, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. Any Term Bonds (defined herein) shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption").

**MATURITY SCHEDULE**

(On Inside Cover)

*The Bonds are offered for delivery when, as and if issued, and received by the initial purchaser (the "Purchaser") subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. The Bonds are expected to be available for initial delivery through the services of DTC on or about February 12, 2019.*

**BIDS DUE JANUARY 14, 2019 BY 11:30 A.M. CENTRAL TIME**

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

**\$6,600,000\***  
**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**(A POLITICAL SUBDIVISION OF THE STATE OF TEXAS LOCATED IN MONTAGUE AND COOKE COUNTIES, TEXAS)**  
**UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019**

**MATURITY SCHEDULE\***  
Base CUSIP No.: \_\_\_\_\_<sup>(1)</sup>

<b>Maturity Date 2/15</b>	<b>Principal Amount*</b>	<b>Interest Rate</b>	<b>Initial Yield</b>	<b>CUSIP No. Suffix<sup>(1)</sup></b>
2020	\$125,000			
2021	150,000			
2022	180,000			
2023	185,000			
2024	195,000			
2025	200,000			
2026	205,000			
2027	210,000			
2028	215,000			
2029	225,000			
2030	235,000			
2031	240,000			
2032	250,000			
2033	260,000			
2034	275,000			
2035	285,000			
2036	295,000			
2037	305,000			
2038	320,000			
2039	335,000			
2040	345,000			
2041	365,000			
2042	380,000			
2043	400,000			
2044	420,000			

(Interest to accrue from the Dated Date)

\*Preliminary, subject to change.

<sup>(1)</sup> CUSIP numbers are included solely for the convenience of owners of the Bonds. CUSIP is a registered trademark of the American Bankers Association. CUSIP data herein is provided by CUSIP Global Services, managed by S&P Global Market Intelligence on behalf of The American Bankers Association. This data is not intended to create a database and does not serve in any way as a substitute for the CUSIP Services. None of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser are responsible for the selection or correctness of the CUSIP numbers set forth herein.

## SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### BOARD OF TRUSTEES

<u>Name</u>	<u>Date Initially Elected</u>	<u>Current Term Expires</u>	<u>Occupation</u>
Leeton Phillips, President	1997	2021	Rancher
Mike Martin, Vice President	2002	2019	Rancher
Rebecca Harris, Secretary	2008	2020	Retired School Principal
Jeff Pledger, Member	2008	2020	Paramedic
Rodney Swirczynski, Member	2011	2019	Sales
Scott Thomas, Member	2014	2020	Electric Coop Supervisor
Dee Weger, Member	2009	2021	Veterinary Assistant

### APPOINTED OFFICIALS

<u>Name</u>	<u>Position</u>	<u>Length of Education Service</u>	<u>Length of Service with the District</u>
Curtis Eldridge	Superintendent	26 Years	8 Years

### CONSULTANTS AND ADVISORS

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas	Bond Counsel
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., Plano, Texas	Financial Advisor
Freemon, Shapard & Story, Windthorst, Texas	Certified Public Accountants

For additional information, contact:

Curtis Eldridge  
Superintendent  
Saint Jo ISD  
206 West Evans Street  
Saint Jo, Texas 76265  
(940) 995-2668

Douglas Whitt / Brian Grubbs / Robert White  
SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc.  
5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210  
Plano, Texas 75024  
(214) 765-1469  
(214) 279-8683 (Fax)

## USE OF INFORMATION IN OFFICIAL STATEMENT

For purposes of compliance with Rule 15c2-12 of the United States Securities and Exchange Commission, as amended ("Rule 15c2-12"), and in effect on the date of this Preliminary Official Statement, this document constitutes an "official statement" of the District with respect to the Bonds that has been "deemed final" by the District as of its date except for the omission of no more than the information permitted by Rule 15c2-12.

This Official Statement, which includes the cover page and the Appendices hereto, does not constitute an offer to sell or the solicitation of an offer to buy in any jurisdiction to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer, solicitation or sale.

No dealer, broker, salesperson or other person has been authorized to give information or to make any representation other than those contained in this Official Statement, and, if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon.

The Purchaser has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Purchaser has reviewed the information in the Official Statement pursuant to their responsibilities to investors under the federal securities laws, but the Purchaser does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District and other sources believed to be reliable, but such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness and is not to be construed as the promise or guarantee of the District, the Financial Advisor or the Purchaser. This Official Statement contains, in part, estimates and matters of opinion which are not intended as statements of fact, and no representation is made as to the correctness of such estimates and opinions, or that they will be realized.

The information and expressions of opinion contained herein are subject to change without notice, and neither the delivery of this Official Statement nor any sale made hereunder shall, under any circumstances, create any implication that there has been no change in the affairs of the District or other matters described herein. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM – PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking" and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the undertakings of the Texas Education Agency and the District, respectively, to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

THE BONDS ARE EXEMPT FROM REGISTRATION WITH THE UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION AND CONSEQUENTLY HAVE NOT BEEN REGISTERED THEREWITH. THE REGISTRATION, QUALIFICATION, OR EXEMPTION OF THE BONDS IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE SECURITIES LAW PROVISIONS OF THE JURISDICTIONS IN WHICH THE BONDS HAVE BEEN REGISTERED, QUALIFIED, OR EXEMPTED SHOULD NOT BE REGARDED AS A RECOMMENDATION THEREOF.

IN CONNECTION WITH THIS OFFERING, THE PURCHASER MAY OVER-ALLOT OR EFFECT TRANSACTIONS WHICH STABILIZE THE MARKET PRICE OF THE BONDS AT A LEVEL ABOVE THAT WHICH MIGHT OTHERWISE PREVAIL IN THE OPEN MARKET. SUCH STABILIZING, IF COMMENCED, MAY BE DISCONTINUED AT ANY TIME.

NONE OF THE DISTRICT, ITS FINANCIAL ADVISOR, OR THE PURCHASER MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY WITH RESPECT TO THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT REGARDING THE DEPOSITORY TRUST COMPANY ("DTC") OR ITS BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM, OR THE AFFAIRS OF THE TEXAS EDUCATION AGENCY ("TEA") DESCRIBED UNDER "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM", AS SUCH INFORMATION WAS PROVIDED BY DTC AND TEA, RESPECTIVELY.

THIS OFFICIAL STATEMENT CONTAINS "FORWARD-LOOKING" STATEMENTS WITHIN THE MEANING OF SECTION 21E OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED. SUCH STATEMENTS MAY INVOLVE KNOWN AND UNKNOWN RISKS, UNCERTAINTIES AND OTHER FACTORS WHICH MAY CAUSE THE ACTUAL RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS TO BE DIFFERENT FROM THE FUTURE RESULTS, PERFORMANCE AND ACHIEVEMENTS EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED BY SUCH FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS. INVESTORS ARE CAUTIONED THAT THE ACTUAL RESULTS COULD DIFFER MATERIALLY FROM THOSE SET FORTH IN THE FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS.

The agreements of the District and others related to the Bonds are contained solely in the contracts described herein. Neither this Official Statement nor any other statement made in connection with the offer or sale of the Bonds is to be construed as constituting an agreement with the purchasers of the Bonds. INVESTORS SHOULD READ THIS ENTIRE OFFICIAL STATEMENT, INCLUDING ALL APPENDICES ATTACHED HERETO, TO OBTAIN INFORMATION ESSENTIAL TO MAKING AN INFORMED INVESTMENT DECISION.

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<p>SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT..... 1</p> <p>INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT ..... 2</p> <p>THE BONDS ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Authorization and Purpose..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">General Description ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Redemption ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Selection of Bonds Redeemed in Part ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices ..... 2</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Security ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Permanent School Fund Guarantee ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Legality ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Payment Record..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Amendments ..... 3</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">Defeasance ..... 3</p> <p>REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES ..... 4</p> <p>BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM ..... 4</p> <p>REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE ..... 5</p> <p>AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES ..... 6</p> <p>THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT ..... 9</p> <p>STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS ..... 10</p> <p>CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM..... 10</p>	<p>THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT ..... 13</p> <p>THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM... 13</p> <p>TAX RATE LIMITATIONS ..... 25</p> <p>DEBT LIMITATIONS ..... 26</p> <p>EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS ..... 26</p> <p>RATING ..... 26</p> <p>LEGAL MATTERS ..... 27</p> <p>TAX MATTERS ..... 27</p> <p>INVESTMENT POLICIES ..... 28</p> <p>REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE. 30</p> <p>FINANCIAL ADVISOR..... 30</p> <p>LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS ..... 30</p> <p>CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION ..... 31</p> <p>LITIGATION ..... 32</p> <p>FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS ..... 32</p> <p>WINNING BIDDER ..... 32</p> <p>CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT ..... 32</p> <p>CONCLUDING STATEMENT ..... 33</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Financial Information of the District .....	Appendix A
General Information Regarding the District and Its Economy.....	Appendix B
Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel.....	Appendix C
Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017 .....	Appendix D

## SELECTED DATA FROM THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

The selected data is subject in all respects to the more complete information and definitions contained or incorporated in this Official Statement. The offering of the Bonds to potential investors is made only by means of this entire Official Statement. No person is authorized to detach this page from this Official Statement or to otherwise use it without the entire Official Statement.

<b>The District</b>	The Saint Jo Independent School District (the "District") is a political subdivision of the State of Texas located in Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas. The District is governed by a seven-member Board of Trustees (the "Board"). Policy-making and supervisory functions are the responsibility of, and are vested in, the Board. The Board delegates administrative responsibilities to the Superintendent of Schools who is the chief administrative officer of the District. Support services are supplied by consultants and advisors.
<b>The Bonds</b>	The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$6,600,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State of Texas, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), as amended, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election") and the order to be adopted by the Board of Trustees (the "Board") on January 14, 2019 (the "Order"). Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) designing, constructing, renovating, improving, acquiring, and equipping school facilities (and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities), the purchase of the necessary sites for school facilities, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS - Authorization and Purpose").
<b>Paying Agent/Registrar</b>	The initial Paying Agent/Registrar is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. The District intends to use the Book-Entry-Only System of the Depository Trust Company ("DTC"). (See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein).
<b>Security</b>	The Bonds will constitute direct obligations of the District, payable as to principal and interest from ad valorem taxes levied annually against all taxable property located within the District, without legal limitation as to rate or amount. Payments of principal and interest on the Bonds will be further secured by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of Texas. (See "THE BONDS – Security", "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Redemption</b>	The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption"). Any Term Bonds (defined herein) shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption. (See "THE BONDS – Redemption").
<b>Permanent School Fund Guarantee</b>	The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program, which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "THE BONDS – Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").
<b>Rating</b>	The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency. The District's unenhanced underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A" by S&P. (See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" and "RATING" herein.)
<b>Tax Matters</b>	In the opinion of Bond Counsel (identified below), interest on the Bonds is excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under existing law, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS - Tax Exemption" herein, and is not includable in the federal alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. (See "TAX MATTERS" for a discussion of the opinion of Bond Counsel.)
<b>Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations</b>	The District will designate the Bonds as "Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" for financial institutions. (See "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations").
<b>Payment Record</b>	The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.
<b>Legal Opinion</b>	Delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the rendering of an opinion as to legality by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "Appendix C – Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").
<b>Delivery</b>	When issued, anticipated to be on or about February 12, 2019.

## INTRODUCTORY STATEMENT

This Official Statement (the "Official Statement"), which includes the cover page and the Appendices attached hereto, has been prepared by the Saint Jo Independent School District (the "District"), a political subdivision of the State of Texas (the "State") located in Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas, in connection with the offering by the District of its Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019 (the "Bonds") identified on page ii hereof.

All financial and other information presented in this Official Statement has been provided by the District from its records, except for information expressly attributed to other sources. The presentation of information, including tables of receipts from taxes and other sources, is intended to show recent historic information, and is not intended to indicate future or continuing trends in the financial position or other affairs of the District. No representation is made that past experience, as is shown by that financial and other information, will necessarily continue or be repeated in the future.

There follows in this Official Statement descriptions of the Bonds and the order (the "Order") to be adopted by the Board of Trustees of the District (the "Board") on January 14, 2019 authorizing the issuance of the Bonds, and certain other information about the District and its finances. All descriptions of documents contained herein are only summaries and are qualified in their entirety by reference to each such document. Copies of such documents may be obtained upon request by writing the Saint Jo Independent School District, 206 West Evans Street, Saint Jo, Texas 76265 and, during the offering period, from the Financial Advisor, SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc., 5800 Granite Parkway, Suite 210, Plano, Texas 75024 by electronic mail or upon payment of reasonable copying, mailing, and handling charges.

This Official Statement speaks only as of its date, and the information contained herein is subject to change. A copy of this Official Statement relating to the Bonds will be submitted by the initial Purchaser of the Bonds to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board, and will be available through its Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system. See "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" for a description of the District's undertaking to provide certain information on a continuing basis.

## THE BONDS

### Authorization and Purpose

The Bonds are being issued in the principal amount of \$6,600,000 (preliminary, subject to change) pursuant to the Constitution and general laws of the State, particularly Sections 45.001 and 45.003(b)(1), as amended, Texas Education Code, an election held in the District on November 6, 2018 (the "Election") and the Order to be adopted January 14, 2019. Proceeds from the sale of the Bonds will be used for the purpose of (i) designing, constructing, renovating, improving, acquiring, and equipping school facilities (and any necessary or related removal of existing facilities), the purchase of the necessary sites for school facilities, and (ii) to pay the costs of issuing the Bonds.

### General Description

The Bonds will be dated January 15, 2019 and will bear interest from such dated date (the "Dated Date"). The Bonds will mature on the dates and in the principal amounts set forth on page ii of this Official Statement. Interest on the Bonds will be computed on the basis of a 360-day year of twelve 30-day months, and is payable on August 15, 2019 and on each February 15 and August 15 until stated maturity or prior redemption.

The Bonds will be issued only as fully registered bonds. The Bonds will be issued in the denominations of \$5,000 of principal or any integral multiple thereof within a maturity.

Interest on the Bonds is payable by check mailed on or before each interest payment date by the Paying Agent/Registrar, initially, BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas, to the registered owner at the last known address as it appears on the Paying Agent/Registrar's books on the Record Date (as defined herein) or by such other customary banking arrangement acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar and the registered owner to whom interest is to be paid, provided, however, that such person shall bear all risk and expense of such other arrangements. Principal of the Bonds will be payable only upon presentation of such Bonds at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar at stated maturity or prior redemption. So long as the Bonds are registered in the name of CEDE & CO. or other nominee for The Depository Trust Company ("DTC"), payments of principal of and interest on the Bonds will be made as described in "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

If the date for the payment of the principal of or interest on the Bonds is a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions in the city where the Paying Agent/Registrar is located are authorized by law or executive order to close, then the date for such payment shall be the next succeeding day which is not a Saturday, Sunday, legal holiday or a day on which banking institutions are authorized to close; and payment on such date shall have the same force and effect as if made on the original date payment was due.

### Redemption

The Bonds maturing on or after February 15, 2030 are subject to redemption at the option of the District in whole or in part on February 15, 2029 or any date thereafter, at a price equal to the principal amount thereof, plus accrued interest to the date of redemption. In addition, any consecutive maturities of Bonds grouped into one or more "term" Bonds (the "Term Bonds") shall be subject to mandatory sinking fund redemption in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Order, which provisions shall be disclosed in the final Official Statement.

### Selection of Bonds Redeemed in Part

If less than all of the Bonds are to be redeemed, the District shall determine the amounts and maturities thereof to be redeemed and shall direct the Paying Agent/Registrar to select by lot the Bonds, or portions thereof, to be redeemed.

### Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices

Not less than 30 days prior to a redemption date for the Bonds, the District shall cause a notice of redemption to be sent by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to each registered owner of a Bond to be redeemed, in whole or in part, at the address of the registered owner appearing on the registration books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the business day next preceding the date of mailing such notice. ANY NOTICE SO MAILED SHALL BE CONCLUSIVELY PRESUMED TO HAVE BEEN DULY GIVEN, WHETHER OR NOT THE REGISTERED OWNER RECEIVES SUCH NOTICE. NOTICE HAVING BEEN SO GIVEN, THE BONDS CALLED FOR REDEMPTION SHALL BECOME DUE AND PAYABLE ON THE SPECIFIED REDEMPTION DATE, AND NOTWITHSTANDING THAT ANY BOND OR PORTION THEREOF HAS NOT BEEN SURRENDERED FOR PAYMENT, INTEREST ON SUCH BOND OR PORTION THEREOF SHALL CEASE TO ACCRUE.

The Paying Agent/Registrar and the District, so long as a Book-Entry-Only System is used for the Bonds, will send any notice of redemption, notice of proposed amendment to the Order or other notices with respect to the Bonds only to DTC. Any failure by DTC to advise any DTC participant, or of any DTC participant or indirect participant to notify the beneficial owner, shall not affect the validity of the redemption of the Bonds called for redemption or any other action premised on any such notice. Redemption of portions of the Bonds by the District will reduce the outstanding principal amount of such Bonds held by DTC. In such event, DTC may implement, through its Book-Entry-Only System, a redemption of such Bonds held for the account of DTC participants in accordance with its rules or other agreements with DTC participants and then DTC participants and indirect participants may implement a redemption of such Bonds from the beneficial owners. Any such selection of Bonds to be redeemed will not be governed by the Order and will not be conducted by the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar will have any responsibility to DTC participants, indirect participants or the persons for whom DTC participants act as nominees, with respect to the payments on the Bonds or the providing of notice to DTC participants, indirect participants, or beneficial owners of the selection of portions of the Bonds for redemption. See "BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM" herein.

### **Security**

The Bonds are direct and voted obligations of the District and are payable as to both principal and interest from an ad valorem tax annually levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, on all taxable property within the District. The District has received conditional approval from the Texas Education Agency ("TEA") for the payment of the Bonds to be guaranteed under the State of Texas Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (hereinafter defined), which guarantee will automatically become effective when the Attorney General of Texas approves the Bonds. (See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS", "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" and "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM").

### **Permanent School Fund Guarantee**

In connection with the sale of the Bonds, the District has received conditional approval from the Commissioner of Education of the TEA for the guarantee of the Bonds under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program (Chapter 45, Subchapter C, of the Texas Education Code, as amended). Subject to meeting certain conditions discussed under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein, the Bonds will be absolutely and unconditionally guaranteed by the corpus of the Permanent School Fund of the State of Texas. In the event of a payment default by the District, registered owners will receive all payments due from the corpus of the Permanent School Fund.

In the event the District defeases any of the Bonds, the payment of such defeased Bonds will cease to be guaranteed by the Permanent School Fund Guarantee.

### **Legality**

The Bonds are offered when, as and if issued, subject to the approval of legality by the Attorney General of the State of Texas and the approval of certain legal matters by Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel. (See "LEGAL MATTERS" and "Appendix C - Form of Legal Opinion of Bond Counsel").

### **Payment Record**

The District has never defaulted on the payment of its bonded indebtedness.

### **Amendments**

The District, may, without the consent of or notice to any holders of the Bonds, from time to time and at any time, amend the Order in any manner not detrimental to the interests of the holders of the Bonds, including the curing of any ambiguity, inconsistency, or formal defect or omission therein. In addition, the District may, with the written consent of holders of the Bonds holding a majority in aggregate principal amount of the Bonds then outstanding, amend, add to, or rescind any of the provisions of the Order; provided, however, that, without the consent of all holders of outstanding Bonds, no such amendment, addition, or rescission shall (1) extend the time or times of payment of the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds, reduce the principal amount thereof, the redemption price, or the rate of interest thereon, or in any other way modify the terms of payment of the principal of, redemption premium, if any, or interest on the Bonds, (2) give any preference to any Bond over any other Bond, or (3) reduce the aggregate principal amount of Bonds required to be held by holders for consent to any such amendment, addition, or rescission.

### **Defeasance**

The Order provides for the defeasance of the Bonds when the payment of the principal of and premium, if any, on the Bonds, plus interest thereon to the due date thereof (whether such due date be by reason of maturity, redemption or otherwise), is provided by irrevocably depositing with the Paying Agent/Registrar or other authorized escrow agent, in trust (1) money sufficient to make such payment, (2) Government Obligations (defined below) to mature as to principal and interest in such amounts and at such times to insure the availability, without reinvestment, of sufficient money to make such payment, and all necessary and proper fees, compensation and expenses of the paying agent for the Bonds, or (3) a combination of money and Government Obligations together so certified sufficient to make such payment. The District has additionally reserved the right in the Order, subject to satisfying the requirements of (1) and (2) above, to substitute other Government Obligations for the Government Obligations originally deposited, to reinvest the uninvested moneys on deposit for such defeasance and to withdraw for the benefit of the District money in excess of the amount required for such defeasance. The Order provides that "Government Obligations" means (a) direct, noncallable obligations of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed by the United States of America, (b) noncallable obligations of an agency or instrumentality of the United States of America, including obligations that are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by the agency or instrumentality and that, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, (c) noncallable obligations of a state or an agency or a county, municipality, or other political subdivision of a state that have been refunded and, on the date of their acquisition or purchase by the District, are rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than "AAA" or its equivalent, or (d) any additional securities and obligations hereafter authorized by Texas law as eligible for use to accomplish the discharge of obligations such as the Bonds. District officials may restrict such eligible securities as deemed necessary. There is no assurance that the ratings for U.S. Treasury securities acquired to defease any Bonds, or those for any other Government Obligations, will be maintained at any particular rating category. Further, there is no assurance that current Texas law will not be amended in a manner that expands or contracts the list of permissible defeasance securities (such list consisting of those securities identified in clauses (a) through (c) above), or any rating requirement thereon, that may be purchased with defeasance proceeds relating to the Bonds ("Defeasance Proceeds"), though the District has reserved the right to utilize any additional securities for such purpose in the event the aforementioned list is expanded. Because the Order does not contractually limit such permissible defeasance securities and expressly recognizes the ability of the District to use lawfully available Defeasance

Proceeds to defease all or any portion of the Bonds, registered owners of Bonds are deemed to have consented to the use of Defeasance Proceeds to purchase such other defeasance securities, notwithstanding the fact that such defeasance securities may not be of the same investment quality as those currently identified under Texas law as permissible defeasance securities.

Upon such deposit as described above, such Bonds shall no longer be regarded as outstanding or unpaid. After firm banking and financial arrangements for the discharge and final payment of the Bonds have been made as described above, all rights of the District to initiate proceedings to call the Bonds for redemption or take any other action amending the terms of the Bonds are extinguished; provided, however, the District has the option, to be exercised at the time of the defeasance of the Bonds, to call for redemption at an earlier date than those Bonds which have been defeased to their maturity date, if the District (i) in the proceedings providing for the firm banking and financial arrangements, expressly reserves the right to call the Bonds for redemption, (ii) gives notice of the reservation of that right to the owners of the Bonds immediately following the making of the firm banking and financial arrangements, and (iii) directs that notice of the reservation be included in any redemption notices that it authorizes.

Defeasance of the Bonds cancels the Permanent School Fund guarantee with respect to such defeased Bonds.

### **REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES**

If the District defaults in the payment, when due, of principal or interest, or redemption price of the Bonds when due, or if it fails to make payments into any fund or funds created in the Order, or defaults in the observation or performance of any other covenants, conditions, or obligations set forth in the Order, and the State fails to honor the Permanent School Fund Guarantee as hereinafter discussed, the failure to perform which materially, adversely affects the rights of the owners, including but not limited to, their prospective ability to be repaid in accordance with the Order any registered owner may seek a writ of mandamus from a court of proper jurisdiction to compel the District to make such payment or observe and perform such covenants, obligations, or conditions. The issuance of a writ of mandamus may be sought if there is no other available remedy at law to compel performance of the Bonds or the Order and the District's obligations are not uncertain or disputed as well as to enforce the rights of payment under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee. The issuance of a writ of mandamus is controlled by equitable principles, and rests with the discretion of the court, but may not be arbitrarily refused. There is no acceleration of maturity of the Bonds in the event of default and, consequently, the remedy of mandamus may have to be relied upon from year to year. The Order does not provide for the appointment of a trustee to represent the interest of the owners upon any failure of the District to perform in accordance with the terms of the Order, or upon any other condition and accordingly all legal actions to enforce such remedies would have to be undertaken at the initiative of, and be financed by, the registered owners. The Texas Supreme Court has ruled in *Tooke v. City of Mexia*, 197 S.W.3d 325 (Tex. 2006), that a waiver of sovereign immunity in a contractual dispute must be provided for by statute in "clear and unambiguous" language. Because it is unclear whether the Texas Legislature has effectively waived the District's sovereign immunity from a suit for money damages, bondholders may not be able to bring such a suit against the District for breach of the Bonds or Order covenants. Even if a judgment against the District could be obtained, it could not be enforced by direct levy and execution against the District's property. Further, the registered owners cannot themselves foreclose on property within the District or sell property within the District to enforce the tax lien on taxable property to pay the principal of and interest on the Bonds. Furthermore, the District is eligible to seek relief from its creditors under Chapter 9 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code ("Chapter 9"). Although Chapter 9 provides for the recognition of a security interest represented by a specifically pledged source of revenues, the pledge of ad valorem taxes in support of a general obligation of a bankrupt entity is not specifically recognized as a security interest under Chapter 9. Chapter 9 also includes an automatic stay provision that would prohibit, without Bankruptcy Court approval, the prosecution of any other legal action by creditors or bondholders of an entity which has sought protection under Chapter 9. Therefore, should the District avail itself of Chapter 9 protection from creditors, the ability to enforce would be subject to the approval of the Bankruptcy Court (which could require that the action be heard in Bankruptcy Court instead of other federal or state court); and the Bankruptcy Code provides for broad discretionary powers of a Bankruptcy Court in administering any proceeding brought before it. See "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein for a description of the procedures to be followed for payment of the Bonds by the Permanent School Fund in the event the District fails to make a payment on the Bonds when due. The opinion of Bond Counsel will note that all opinions relative to the enforceability of the Order and the Bonds are qualified with respect to the customary rights of debtors relative to their creditors and by general principles of equity which permit the exercise of judicial discretion.

### **BOOK-ENTRY-ONLY SYSTEM**

*This section describes how ownership of the Bonds is to be transferred and how the principal of, premium, if any, and interest on the Bonds are to be paid to and credited by DTC while the Bonds are registered in its nominee name. The information in this section concerning DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System has been provided by DTC for use in disclosure documents such as this Official Statement. The District, the Financial Advisor and the Purchaser believe the source of such information to be reliable, but take no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.*

*The District and the Purchaser cannot and do not give any assurance that (1) DTC will distribute payments of debt service on the Bonds, or redemption or other notices, to DTC participants, (2) DTC participants or others will distribute debt service payments paid to DTC or its nominee (as the registered owner of the Bonds), or redemption or other notices, to the Beneficial Owners, or that they will do so on a timely basis, or (3) DTC will serve and act in the manner described in this Official Statement. The current rules applicable to DTC are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), and the current procedures of DTC to be followed in dealing with DTC participants are on file with DTC.*

The DTC will act as securities depository for the Bonds. The Bonds will be issued as fully-registered securities registered in the name of Cede & Co. (DTC's partnership nominee) or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. One fully-registered Bond certificate will be issued for each maturity of the Bonds, each in the aggregate principal amount of such maturity, and will be deposited with DTC.

DTC, the world's largest securities depository, is a limited-purpose trust company organized under the New York Banking Law, a "banking organization" within the meaning of the New York Banking Law, a member of the Federal Reserve System, a "clearing corporation" within the meaning of the New York Uniform Commercial Code, and a "clearing agency" registered pursuant to the provisions of Section 17A of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. DTC holds and provides asset servicing for over 3.5 million issues of U.S. and non-U.S. equity issues, corporate and municipal debt issues, and money market instruments (from over 100 countries) that DTC's participants ("Direct Participants") deposit with DTC. DTC also facilitates the post-trade settlement among Direct Participants of sales and other securities transactions in deposited securities, through electronic computerized book-entry transfers and pledges between Direct Participants' accounts. This eliminates the need for physical movement of securities certificates. Direct Participants include both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust companies, clearing corporations, and certain other organizations. DTC is a wholly-owned subsidiary of The Depository Trust & Clearing Corporation ("DTCC"). DTCC is the holding company for DTC, National Securities Clearing Corporation and Fixed Income Clearing Corporation, all of which are registered clearing agencies. DTCC is owned by the users of its regulated subsidiaries. Access to the DTC system is also available to others such as both U.S. and non-U.S. securities brokers and dealers, banks, trust



companies, and clearing corporations that clear through or maintain a custodial relationship with a Direct Participant, either directly or indirectly ("Indirect Participants"). DTC has a S&P Global Ratings rating of AA+. The DTC Rules applicable to its Participants are on file with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission. More information about DTC can be found at [www.dtcc.com](http://www.dtcc.com).

Purchases of Bonds under the DTC system must be made by or through Direct Participants, which will receive a credit for the Bonds on DTC's records. The ownership interest of each actual purchaser of each Bond ("Beneficial Owner") is in turn to be recorded on the Direct and Indirect Participants' records. Beneficial Owners will not receive written confirmation from DTC of their purchase. Beneficial Owners are, however, expected to receive written confirmations providing details of the transaction, as well as periodic statements of their holdings, from the Direct or Indirect Participant through which the Beneficial Owner entered into the transaction. Transfers of ownership interests in the Bonds are to be accomplished by entries made on the books of Direct and Indirect Participants acting on behalf of Beneficial Owners. Beneficial Owners will not receive certificates representing their ownership interests in Bonds, except in the event that use of the Book-Entry-Only System for the Bonds is discontinued.

To facilitate subsequent transfers, all Bonds deposited by Direct Participants with DTC are registered in the name of DTC's partnership nominee, Cede & Co., or such other name as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. The deposit of Bonds with DTC and their registration in the name of Cede & Co. or such other DTC nominee do not effect any change in beneficial ownership. DTC has no knowledge of the actual Beneficial Owners of the Bonds; DTC's records reflect only the identity of the Direct Participants to whose accounts such Bonds are credited, which may or may not be the Beneficial Owners. The Direct and Indirect Participants will remain responsible for keeping account of their holdings on behalf of their customers.

Conveyance of notices and other communications by DTC to Direct Participants, by Direct Participants to Indirect Participants, and by Direct Participants and Indirect Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by arrangements among them, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to take certain steps to augment the transmission to them of notices of significant events with respect to the Bonds, such as redemptions, tenders, defaults, and proposed amendments to the Bond documents. For example, Beneficial Owners of Bonds may wish to ascertain that the nominee holding the Bonds for their benefit has agreed to obtain and transmit notices to Beneficial Owners. In the alternative, Beneficial Owners may wish to provide their names and addresses to the registrar and request that copies of notices be provided directly to them.

Redemption notices shall be sent to DTC. If less than all of the Bonds within a maturity are being redeemed, DTC's practice is to determine by lot the amount of the interest of each Direct Participant in such maturity to be redeemed.

Neither DTC nor Cede & Co. (nor any other DTC nominee) will consent or vote with respect to Bonds unless authorized by a Direct Participant in accordance with DTC's procedures. Under its usual procedures, DTC mails an Omnibus Proxy to The District as soon as possible after the record date. The Omnibus Proxy assigns Cede & Co.'s consenting or voting rights to those Direct Participants to whose accounts Bonds are credited on the record date (identified in a listing attached to the Omnibus Proxy).

All payments on the Bonds will be made to Cede & Co., or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC. DTC's practice is to credit Direct Participants' accounts upon DTC's receipt of funds and corresponding detail information from the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, on payable date in accordance with their respective holdings shown on DTC's records. Payments by Participants to Beneficial Owners will be governed by standing instructions and customary practices, as is the case with securities held for the accounts of customers in bearer form or registered in "street name," and will be the responsibility of such Participant and not of DTC, the Paying Agent/Registrar, or the District, subject to any statutory or regulatory requirements as may be in effect from time to time. All payments to Cede & Co. (or such other nominee as may be requested by an authorized representative of DTC) are the responsibility of the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar, disbursement of such payments to Direct Participants will be the responsibility of DTC, and disbursement of such payments to the Beneficial Owners will be the responsibility of Direct and Indirect Participants.

DTC may discontinue providing its services as depository with respect to the Bonds at any time by giving reasonable notice to the District or the Paying Agent/Registrar. Under such circumstances, in the event that a successor depository is not obtained, Bond certificates are required to be printed and delivered.

The District may decide to discontinue use of the system of book-entry-only transfers through DTC (or a successor Bonds depository). In that event, physical Bond certificates will be printed and delivered.

The information in this section concerning DTC and DTC's Book-Entry-Only System has been obtained from sources that the District believes to be reliable, but none of the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser take any responsibility for the accuracy thereof.

#### **Use of Certain Terms in Other Sections of this Official Statement**

In reading this Official Statement it should be understood that while the Bonds are in the Book-Entry-Only System, references in other sections of this Official Statement to registered owners should be read to include the person for which the Direct or Indirect Participant acquires an interest in the Bonds, but (i) all rights of ownership must be exercised through DTC and the Book-Entry-Only System, and (ii) except as described above, notices that are to be given to registered owners under the Order will be given only to DTC.

### **REGISTRATION, TRANSFER AND EXCHANGE**

#### **Paying Agent/Registrar**

The initial Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds is BOKF, NA, Dallas, Texas. In the Order, the District covenants to maintain and provide a Paying Agent/Registrar until the Bonds are duly paid.

#### **Successor Paying Agent/Registrar**

Provision is made in the Order for replacing the Paying Agent/Registrar. If the District replaces the Paying Agent/Registrar, such Paying Agent/Registrar shall, promptly upon the appointment of a successor, deliver the Paying Agent/Registrar's records to the successor Paying Agent/Registrar, and the successor Paying Agent/Registrar shall act in the same capacity as the previous Paying Agent/Registrar. Any successor Paying Agent/Registrar selected by the District shall be a commercial bank or trust company organized under the laws of the United States or any state or other entity duly qualified and legally authorized to serve and perform the duties of the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds. Upon any change in the Paying Agent/Registrar for the Bonds, the District has agreed to promptly cause a written notice thereof to be sent to each registered owner of the Bonds by United States mail, first-class, postage prepaid, which notice shall also give the address of the new Paying Agent/Registrar.

#### **Initial Registration**

Definitive Bonds will be initially registered and delivered only to CEDE & CO., the nominee of DTC pursuant to the Book-Entry-Only System described herein.

## **Future Registration**

In the event the Book-Entry-Only System is discontinued, the Bonds may be transferred, registered and assigned on the registration books only upon presentation and surrender of the Bonds to the Paying Agent/Registrar, and such registration and transfer shall be without expense or service charge to the registered owner, except for any tax or other governmental charges required to be paid with respect to such registration and transfer. A Bond may be assigned by the execution of an assignment form on the Bonds or by other instrument of transfer and assignment acceptable to the Paying Agent/Registrar. A new Bond or Bonds will be delivered by the Paying Agent/Registrar in lieu of the Bond or Bonds being transferred or exchanged at the corporate trust office of the Paying Agent/Registrar, or sent by United States registered mail to the new registered owner at the registered owner's request, risk and expense. To the extent possible, new Bonds issued in an exchange or transfer of Bonds will be delivered to the registered owner or assignee of the registered owner in not more than three (3) business days after the receipt of the Bonds to be canceled in the exchange or transfer and the written instrument of transfer or request for exchange duly executed by the registered owner or his duly authorized agent, in form satisfactory to the Paying Agent/Registrar. New Bonds registered and delivered in an exchange or transfer shall be in authorized denominations and for a like aggregate principal amount as the Bonds surrendered for exchange or transfer.

## **Record Date For Interest Payment**

The record date ("Record Date") for determining the person to whom the interest on the Bonds is payable on any interest payment date means the close of business on the last business day of the next preceding month. In the event of a non-payment of interest on a scheduled payment date, and for 30 days thereafter, a new record date for such interest payment (a "Special Record Date") will be established by the Paying Agent/Registrar, if and when funds for the payment of such interest have been received from the District. Notice of the Special Record Date and of the scheduled payment date of the past due interest (the "Special Payment Date" which shall be 15 days after the Special Record Date) shall be sent at least five business days prior to the Special Record Date by United States mail, first class, postage prepaid, to the address of each registered owner of a Bond appearing on the books of the Paying Agent/Registrar at the close of business on the last business day next preceding the date of mailing of such notice.

## **Limitation on Transfer of Bonds**

Neither the District nor the Paying Agent/Registrar are required (1) to make any transfer or exchange during a period beginning at the opening of business 45 days before the day of the first mailing of a notice of redemption of Bonds and ending at the close of business on the day of such mailing, or (2) to transfer or exchange any Bonds so selected for redemption when such redemption is scheduled to occur within 45 calendar days; provided however, that such limitation of transfer is not applicable to an exchange by the registered owner of the uncalled balance of a Bond.

## **Replacement Bonds**

If any Bond is mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost, a new Bond in the same principal amount as the Bond so mutilated, destroyed, stolen or lost will be issued. In the case of a mutilated Bond, such new Bond will be delivered only upon surrender and cancellation of such mutilated Bond. In the case of any Bond issued in lieu of and substitution for a Bond which has been destroyed, stolen or lost, such new Bond will be delivered only (a) upon filing with the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar a certificate to the effect that such Bond has been destroyed, stolen or lost and proof of the ownership thereof, and (b) upon furnishing the District and the Paying Agent/Registrar with indemnity satisfactory to them. The person requesting the authentication and delivery of a new Bond must pay such expenses as the Paying Agent/Registrar may incur in connection therewith.

## **AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES**

### **Property Tax Code and County Wide Appraisal District**

The Texas Property Tax Code (the "Tax Code") provides for county-wide appraisal and equalization of taxable property values and establishes in each county of the State an appraisal district and an appraisal review board responsible for appraising property for all taxable units within the county. The Montague Central Appraisal District and the Cooke Central Appraisal District (collectively the "Appraisal District") are responsible for appraising property within the District as of January 1 of each year. The appraisal values set by the Appraisal District is subject to review and change by the Appraisal Review Board (the "Appraisal Review Board") which is appointed by the Appraisal District's Board of Directors. Such appraisal rolls, as approved by the Appraisal Review Board, are used by the District in establishing its tax roll and tax rate.

### **Property Subject to Taxation by the District**

Except for certain exemptions provided by State law, all real and certain tangible personal property with a tax situs in the District is subject to taxation by the District. Principal categories of exempt property (including certain exemptions which are subject to local option by the District) include property owned by the State or its political subdivisions if the property is used for public purposes; property exempt from ad valorem taxation by federal law; certain improvements to real property and certain tangible personal property located in designated reinvestment zones on which the District has agreed to abate ad valorem taxes, certain household goods, family supplies and personal effects; farm products owned by the producers; certain property of a nonprofit corporation used in scientific research and educational activities benefiting a college or university; and designated historic sites. Other principal categories of exempt property include tangible personal property not held or used for production of income; solar and windpowered energy devices; most individually owned automobiles; \$10,000 State mandated exemption to residential homesteads of persons ages 65 or over or disabled; a State mandated exemption up to a maximum of \$12,000 for real or personal property of disabled veterans or the surviving spouse or children of an individual who died while on active duty in the armed forces; a State mandated \$25,000 in market value exemption for all residential homesteads (see "Residential Homestead Exemptions" below); and certain classes of intangible property. The Tax Code provides that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until such surviving spouse remarries. In addition, except for increases attributable to certain improvements, the District is prohibited by State law from increasing the total ad valorem tax on the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or of disabled persons above the amount of tax imposed in the year such residence qualified for an exemption based on the age or disability of the owner. The freeze on ad valorem taxes on the homesteads of persons 65 years of age or older and the disabled is also transferable to a different residence homestead. Also, a surviving spouse of a taxpayer who qualifies for the freeze on ad valorem taxes is entitled to the same exemption so long as (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was 55 or older when the deceased spouse died and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. Pursuant to a constitutional amendment approved by

the voters on May 12, 2007, legislation was enacted to reduce the school property tax limitation imposed by the freeze on taxes paid on residence homesteads of persons 65 years of age or over or of disabled persons to correspond to reductions in local school district tax rates from the 2005 tax year to the 2006 tax year and from the 2006 tax year to the 2007 tax year (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Overview" herein). The school property tax limitation provided by the constitutional amendment and enabling legislation apply to the 2007 and subsequent tax years. Owners of agricultural and open space land, under certain circumstances, may request valuation of such land on the basis of productive capacity rather than market value. Article VIII, Section 1-j of the Texas Constitution provides for an exemption from ad valorem taxation for "freeport property," which is defined as goods detained in the State for 175 days or less for the purpose of assembly, storage, manufacturing, processing or fabrication. Taxing units that took action prior to April 1, 1990 may continue to tax freeport property and decisions to continue to tax freeport property may be reversed in the future. However, decisions to exempt freeport property are not subject to reversal. Article VIII, Section 1-n of the Texas Constitution provides for the exemption from taxation of "goods-in-transit." "Goods-in-transit", defined by the Tax Code as personal property acquired or imported into Texas and transported to another location in the State or outside of the State within 175 days of the date the property was acquired or imported into Texas. The exemption excludes oil, natural gas, petroleum products, aircraft and special inventory, including motor vehicle, vessel and out-board motor, heavy equipment and manufactured housing inventory. The Tax Code provision permits local governmental entities, on a local option basis, to take official action by January 1 of the year preceding a tax year, after holding a public hearing, to tax goods-in-transit during the following tax year. A taxpayer may receive only one of the freeport or goods-in-transit exemptions for tangible personal property. Senate Bill 1, passed by the 82<sup>nd</sup> Texas Legislature, 1<sup>st</sup> Called Session, requires again that the governmental entities take affirmative action after October 1 of the prior year but prior to January 1 of the first tax year in which the governing body proposes to tax goods-in-transit to continue its taxation of goods-in-transit in the 2012 tax year and beyond. See "THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT" and "APPENDIX A – FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT - ASSESSED VALUATION" for a schedule of the amount of exemptions granted by the District.

A city or county may create a tax increment financing zone ("TIF") within the city or county with defined boundaries and establish a base value of taxable property in the TIF at the time of its creation. Overlapping taxing units, including school districts, may agree with the city or county to contribute all or part of future ad valorem taxes levied and collected against the "incremental value" (taxable value in excess of the base value) of taxable real property in the TIF to pay or finance the costs of certain public improvements in the TIF, and such taxes levied and collected for and on behalf of the TIF are not available for general use by such contributing taxing units. Prior to September 1, 2001, school districts were allowed to enter into tax abatement agreements to encourage economic development. Under such agreements, a property owner agrees to construct certain improvements on its property. The school district in turn agrees not to levy a tax on all or part of the increased value attributable to the improvements until the expiration of the agreement. The abatement agreement could last for a period of up to 10 years. Effective September 1, 2001, school districts may not enter into tax abatement agreements under the general statute that permits cities and counties to initiate tax abatement agreements. In addition, credit will not be given by the Commissioner of Education in determining a district's property value wealth per student for (1) the appraisal value, in excess of the "frozen" value, of property that is located in a TIF created after May 31, 1999 (except in certain limited circumstances where the city creating the TIF gave notice prior to May 31, 1999 to all other taxing units that levy ad valorem taxes in the TIF of its intention to create the TIF and the TIF was created and had its final project and financing plan approved by the municipality prior to August 31, 1999) or (2) for the loss of value of abated property under any abatement agreement entered into after May 31, 1993.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, in 2001 the Legislature enacted legislation known as the Texas Economic Development Act, which provides incentives for certain school districts to grant limitations on appraised property values and provide ad valorem tax credits to certain corporations and limited liability companies to encourage economic development within the district. Generally, during the last eight years of the ten-year term of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may only levy and collect ad valorem taxes for maintenance and operation purposes on the agreed-to limited appraised property value. The taxpayer is entitled to a tax credit from the school district for the amount of taxes imposed during the first two years of the tax limitation agreement on the appraised value of the property above the agreed-to limited value. Additional State funding is provided to a school district for each year of such tax limitation in the amount of the tax credit provided to the taxpayer. During the first two years of a tax limitation agreement, the school district may not adopt a tax rate that exceeds the district's rollback tax rate (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate").

### **Valuation of Property for Taxation**

Generally, property in the District must be appraised by the Appraisal District at market value as of January 1 of each year. In determining the market value of property, different methods of appraisal may be used, including the cost method of appraisal, the income method of appraisal and the market data comparison method of appraisal, and the method considered most appropriate by the chief appraiser is to be used. Oil and gas reserves are assessed on the basis of pricing information contained in the most recently published Early Release Overview of the Annual Energy Outlook published by the United States Energy Information Administration, as well as appraisal formulas developed by the State Comptroller of Public Accounts. The valuation of assessment of oil and gas reserves depends upon pricing information in either the standard edition of the Annual Energy Outlook or, if the most recently published edition of the Annual Energy Outlook was published before December 1 of the preceding calendar year, the Short-Term Energy Outlook report published in January of the current calendar year. Once an appraisal roll is prepared and finally approved by the Appraisal Review Board, it is used by the District in establishing its tax rolls and tax rate. Assessments under the Tax Code are based on one hundred percent (100%) of market value, except as described below, and no assessment ratio can be applied.

State law requires the appraised value of a residence homestead to be based solely on the property's value as a residence homestead, regardless of whether residential use is considered to be the highest and best use of the property. State law further limits the appraised value of a residence homestead for a tax year to an amount that would not exceed the lesser of (1) the property's market value in the most recent tax year in which the market value was determined by the appraisal district or (2) the sum of (a) 10% of the property's appraised value in the preceding tax year, plus (b) the property's appraised value the preceding tax year, plus (c) the market value of all new improvements to the property.

Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and the Tax Code permit land designated for agricultural use (Section 1-d), open space or timberland (Section 1-d-1) to be appraised at its value based on the land's capacity to produce agricultural or timber products rather than at its fair market value. Landowners wishing to avail themselves of the agricultural use designation must apply for the designation, and the appraiser is required by the Tax Code to act on each claimant's right to the designation individually. If a claimant receives the designation and later loses it by changing the use of the property or selling it to an unqualified owner, the District can collect taxes for previous years based on the new value, including three years for agricultural use and five years for agricultural open-space land and timberland prior to the loss of the designation. The same land may not be qualified under both Section 1-d and Section 1-d-1.

The Tax Code requires the Appraisal District to implement a plan for periodic reappraisal of property to update appraisal values. The plan must provide for appraisal of all real property in the Appraisal District at least once every three years. The District, at its expense, has the right to obtain from the Appraisal District current estimates of appraised values within the District or an estimate of any new property or improvements within the District. While such current estimates of appraisal values may serve to indicate the rate and extent of growth of taxable values within the District, it cannot be used for establishing a tax rate within the District until such time as the Appraisal District chooses to formally include such values on its appraisal rolls.

### **Residential Homestead Exemptions**

Under Section 1-b, Article VIII of the Texas Constitution and State law, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of not less than \$3,000 of the market value of the residence homestead of persons 65 years of age or older or the disabled from all ad valorem taxes thereafter levied by the political subdivision.

Once authorized, such exemption may be repealed or decreased or increased in amount (i) by the governing body of the political subdivision or (ii) by a favorable vote of a majority of the qualified voters at an election called by the governing body of the political subdivision, which election must be called upon receipt of a petition signed by at least 20% of the number of qualified voters who voted in the preceding election of the political subdivision. In the case of a decrease, the amount of the exemption may not be reduced to less than \$3,000 of the market value.

The surviving spouse of an individual who qualifies for the foregoing exemption for the residence homestead of a person 65 or older (but not the disabled) is entitled to an exemption for the same property in an amount equal to that of the exemption for which the deceased spouse qualified if (i) the deceased spouse died in a year in which the deceased spouse qualified for the exemption, (ii) the surviving spouse was at least 55 years of age at the time of the death of the individual's spouse and (iii) the property was the residence homestead of the surviving spouse when the deceased spouse died and remains the residence homestead of the surviving spouse. On November 3, 2015, Texas voters approved an amendment to this law to provide for the exemption from ad valorem taxation for those surviving spouses of veterans who died before 2011, of which such amendment applies for the tax year beginning on or after January 1, 2016.

Section 11.131 of the Texas Tax Code states that a disabled veteran who receives from the United States Department of Veterans Affairs or its successor 100% disability compensation due to a service-connected disability and a rating of 100% disabled or of individual unemployability is entitled to an exemption from taxation of the total appraised value of the veteran's residence homestead. Furthermore, following the approval by the voters at a November 8, 2011 statewide election, effective January 1, 2012, the surviving spouse of a deceased veteran who had received a disability rating of 100% is entitled to receive a residential homestead exemption equal to the exemption received by the deceased spouse until the surviving spouse remarries.

A disabled veteran who has a disability rating of less than 100% is entitled to an exemption equal to the percentage of the veteran's disability rating for a residence homestead that was donated by a charitable organization to such veteran (i) at no cost to such veteran or (ii) effective January 1, 2018, at some cost to such veteran in the form of a cash payment, a mortgage, or both in an aggregate amount that is not more than 50 percent of the good faith estimate of the market value of the residence homestead made by the charitable organization as of the date the donation is made.

Also, the surviving spouse of a member of the armed forces who is killed in action is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the service member's death and said property was the service member's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

The surviving spouse of a first responder who is killed or fatally injured in the line of duty is entitled to a property tax exemption for all or part of the market value of such surviving spouse's residence homestead, if the surviving spouse has not remarried since the first responder's death and said property was the first responder's residence homestead at the time of death. Such exemption is transferable to a different property of the surviving spouse, if the surviving spouse has not remarried, in an amount equal to the exemption received on the prior residence in the last year in which such exemption was received.

In addition to any other exemptions provided by the Tax Code, the governing body of a political subdivision, at its option, may grant an exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads, with a minimum exemption of \$5,000.

In the case of residence homestead exemptions granted under Section 1-b, Article VIII, ad valorem taxes may continue to be levied against the value of homesteads exempted where ad valorem taxes have previously been pledged for the payment of debt if cessation of the levy would impair the obligation of the contract by which the debt was created. Voters in the State approved a constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increasing the mandatory homestead exemption for school districts from \$15,000 to \$25,000, and requiring that the tax limitation for taxpayers who are age 65 and older or disabled be reduced to reflect the additional exemption.

The governing body of a political subdivision is prohibited from repealing or reducing the amount of an optional homestead exemption that was in place for the 2014 tax year (fiscal year 2015) during the period ending December 31, 2019.

### **District and Taxpayer Remedies**

Under certain circumstances, taxpayers and taxing units, including the District, may appeal orders of the Appraisal Review Board by filing a petition for review in district court within 45 days after notice is received that a final order has been entered. In such event, the property value in question may be determined by the court, or by a jury, if requested by any party, or through binding arbitration, if requested by the taxpayer. Additionally, taxing units may bring suit against the Appraisal District to compel compliance with the Tax Code.

### **Levy and Collection of Taxes**

The District is responsible for the collection of its taxes, unless it elects to transfer such functions to another governmental entity. By the later of September 30<sup>th</sup> or 60 days after the certified appraisal roll is delivered to the District, the rate of taxation must be set by the Board based upon the valuation of property within the District as of the preceding January 1 and the amount required to be raised for debt service and maintenance and operations purposes. Taxes are due October 1, or when billed, whichever comes later, and become delinquent after January 31 of the following year. A delinquent tax incurs a penalty from six percent (6%) to twelve percent (12%) of the amount of the tax, depending on the time of payment, and accrues interest at the rate of one percent (1%) per month. If the tax is not paid by the following July 1, an additional penalty of up to twenty percent (20%) may under certain circumstances be imposed by the District. The Tax Code also makes provision for the split payment of taxes, discounts for early payment and the postponement of the delinquency date of taxes under certain circumstances.

## Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate

In setting its annual tax rate, the governing body of a school district generally cannot adopt a tax rate exceeding the district's "rollback tax rate" without approval by a majority of the voters voting at an election approving the higher rate. The tax rate consists of two components: (1) a rate for funding of maintenance and operation expenditures and (2) a rate for debt service. The rollback tax rate for a school district is the lesser of (A) the sum of (1) the product of the district's "State Compression Percentage" for that year multiplied by \$1.50, (2) the rate of \$0.04, (3) any rate increase above the rollback tax rate in prior years that were approved by voters, and (4) the district's current debt rate, or (B) the sum of (1) the district's effective maintenance and operations tax rate, (2) the product of the district's State Compression Percentage for that year multiplied by \$0.06; and (3) the district's current debt rate (see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts" for a description of the "State Compression Percentage"). If for the preceding tax year a district adopted an M&O tax rate that was less than its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year, the district's rollback tax for the current year is calculated as if the district had adopted an M&O tax rate for the preceding tax year equal to its effective M&O tax rate for that preceding tax year.

The "effective maintenance and operations tax rate" for a school district is the tax rate that, applied to the current tax values, would provide local maintenance and operating funds, when added to State funds to be distributed to the district pursuant to Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code for the school year beginning in the current tax year, in the same amount as would have been available to the district in the preceding year if the funding elements of wealth equalization and State funding for the current year had been in effect for the preceding year.

Section 26.05 of the Tax Code provides that the governing body of a taxing unit is required to adopt the annual tax rate for the unit before the later of September 30 or the 60th day after the date the certified appraisal roll is received by the taxing unit, and a failure to adopt a tax rate by such required date will result in the tax rate for the taxing unit for the tax year to be the lower of the effective tax rate calculated for that tax year or the tax rate adopted by the taxing unit for the preceding tax year. Before adopting its annual tax rate, a public meeting must be held for the purpose of adopting a budget for the succeeding year. A notice of public meeting to discuss budget and proposed tax rate must be published in the time, format and manner prescribed in Section 44.004 of the Texas Education Code. Section 44.004(e) of the Texas Education Code provides that a person who owns taxable property in a school district is entitled to an injunction restraining the collection of taxes by the district if the district has not complied with such notice requirements or the language and format requirements of such notice as set forth in Section 44.004(b), (c) and (d), and, if applicable, Subsection (i), and if such failure to comply was not in good faith. Section 44.004(e) further provides the action to enjoin the collection of taxes must be filed before the date the district delivers substantially all of its tax bills. A district may adopt its budget after adopting a tax rate for the tax year in which the fiscal year covered by the budget begins if the district elects to adopt its tax rate before receiving the certified appraisal roll. A district that adopts a tax rate before adopting its budget must hold a public hearing on the proposed tax rate followed by another public hearing on the proposed budget rather than holding a single hearing on the two items.

## District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies

Taxes levied by the District are a personal obligation of the owner of the property. The District has no lien for unpaid taxes on personal property but does have a lien for unpaid taxes upon real property, which lien is discharged upon payment. On January 1 of each year, such tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed for the year on the property. The District's tax lien is on a parity with the tax liens of other such taxing units. A tax lien on real property taxes takes priority over the claims of most creditors and other holders of liens on the property encumbered by the tax lien, whether or not the debt or lien existed before the attachment of the tax lien. The automatic stay in bankruptcy will prevent the automatic attachment of tax liens with respect to post-petition tax years unless relief is sought and granted by the bankruptcy judge. Personal property, under certain circumstances, is subject to seizure and sale for the payment of delinquent taxes, penalty, and interest.

Except with respect to taxpayers who are 65 years of age or older, at any time after taxes on property become delinquent, the District may file suit to foreclose the lien securing payment of the tax, to enforce personal liability for the tax, or both. In filing a suit to foreclose a tax lien on real property, the District must join other taxing units that have claims for delinquent taxes against all or part of the same property. Collection of delinquent taxes may be adversely affected by the amount of taxes owed to other taxing units, by the effects of market conditions on the foreclosure sale price, by taxpayer redemption rights, or by bankruptcy proceedings which restrict the collection of taxpayer debts. Federal bankruptcy law provides that an automatic stay of actions by creditors and other entities, including governmental units, goes into effect with the filing of any petition in bankruptcy. The automatic stay prevents governmental units from foreclosing on property and prevents liens for post-petition taxes from attaching to property and obtaining secured creditor status unless, in either case, an order lifting the stay is obtained from the bankruptcy court. In many cases post-petition taxes are paid as an administrative expense of the estate in bankruptcy or by order of the bankruptcy court.

## THE PROPERTY TAX CODE AS APPLIED TO THE DISTRICT

The Appraisal District has the responsibility for appraising property in the District as well as other taxing units in Montague and Cooke Counties, Texas (the "County"). The Appraisal District is governed by a board of directors appointed by members of the governing bodies of various political subdivisions within the County.

Property within the District is assessed as of January 1 of each year, taxes become due October 1 of the same year and become delinquent on February 1 of the following year.

The District does not tax personal property not used in the production of income, such as personal automobiles.

The District does not collect an additional 20% penalty to defray attorney costs in the collection of delinquent taxes over and above the penalty automatically assessed under the Tax Code.

The District's taxes are collected by the Montague County Appraisal District.

The District does not allow split payments of taxes on homesteads and does not give discounts for early payment of taxes.

The District does not participate in a tax increment financing zone. The District does not grant tax abatements.

The District does not grant the additional local option exemption of up to 20% of the market value of residence homesteads.

The District has not taken action to tax freeport property. The District has not taken action to continue to tax goods-in-transit.

Charges for penalties and interest on the unpaid balance of delinquent taxes are as follows:

<u>Date</u>	<u>Penalty</u>	<u>Interest</u>	<u>Cumulative Total</u>
February	6%	1%	7%
March	7	2	9
April	8	3	11
May	9	4	13
June	10	5	15
July	12	6	18

After July, penalty remains at 12%, and interest accrues at a rate of one percent (1%) for each month or portion of a month the tax remains unpaid. A delinquent tax continues to accrue interest as long as the tax remains unpaid, regardless of whether a judgment for the delinquent tax has been rendered. The purpose of imposing such interest is to compensate the taxing unit for revenue lost because of the delinquency. In addition, State law allows that, if an account is delinquent in July, an amount up to 20% attorney's collection fee may be added to the total tax penalty and interest charge.

## STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS

### Litigation Relating to the Texas Public School Finance System

On seven occasions in the last thirty years, the Texas Supreme Court (the "Court") has issued decisions assessing the constitutionality of the Texas public school finance system (the "Finance System"). The litigation has primarily focused on whether the Finance System, as amended by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") from time to time (i) met the requirements of article VII, section 1 of the Texas Constitution, which requires the Legislature to "establish and make suitable provision for the support and maintenance of an efficient system of public free schools," or (ii) imposed a statewide ad valorem tax in violation of article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution because the statutory limit on property taxes levied by school districts for maintenance and operation purposes had allegedly denied school districts meaningful discretion in setting their tax rates. In response to the Court's previous decisions, the Legislature enacted multiple laws that made substantive changes in the way the Finance System is funded in efforts to address the prior decisions declaring the Finance System unconstitutional.

On May 13, 2016, the Court issued its opinion in the most recent school finance litigation, *Morath v. The Texas Taxpayer & Student Fairness Coal.*, 490 S.W.3d 826 (Tex. 2016) ("*Morath*"). The plaintiffs and intervenors in the case had alleged that the Finance System, as modified by the Legislature in part in response to prior decisions of the Court, violated article VII, section 1 and article VIII, section 1-e of the Texas Constitution. In its opinion, the Court held that "[d]espite the imperfections of the current school funding regime, it meets minimum constitutional requirements." The Court also noted that:

Lawmakers decide if laws pass, and judges decide if those laws pass muster. But our lenient standard of review in this policy-laden area counsels modesty. The judicial role is not to second-guess whether our system is optimal, but whether it is constitutional. Our Byzantine school funding "system" is undeniably imperfect, with immense room for improvement. But it satisfies minimum constitutional requirements.

### Possible Effects of Changes in Law on District Bonds

The Court's decision in *Morath* upheld the constitutionality of the Finance System but noted that the Finance System was "undeniably imperfect". While not compelled by the *Morath* decision to reform the Finance System, the Legislature could enact future changes to the Finance System. Any such changes could benefit or be a detriment to the District. If the Legislature enacts future changes to, or fails adequately to fund the Finance System, or if changes in circumstances otherwise provide grounds for a challenge, the Finance System could be challenged again in the future. In its 1995 opinion in *Edgewood Independent School District v. Meno*, 917 S.W.2d 717 (Tex. 1995), the Court stated that any future determination of unconstitutionality "would not, however, affect the district's authority to levy the taxes necessary to retire previously issued bonds, but would instead require the Legislature to cure the system's unconstitutionality in a way that is consistent with the Contract Clauses of the U.S. and Texas Constitutions" (collectively, the "Contract Clauses"), which prohibit the enactment of laws that impair prior obligations of contracts.

Although, as a matter of law, the Bonds, upon issuance and delivery, will be entitled to the protections afforded previously existing contractual obligations under the Contract Clauses, the District can make no representations or predictions concerning the effect of future legislation, or any litigation that may be associated with such legislation, on the District's financial condition, revenues or operations. While the enactment of future legislation to address school funding in Texas could adversely affect the financial condition, revenues or operations of the District, the District does not anticipate that the security for payment of the Bonds, specifically, the District's obligation to levy an unlimited debt service tax and any Permanent School Fund guarantee of the Bonds would be adversely affected by any such legislation. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM".

## CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM

### Overview

The following language constitutes only a summary of the Finance System as it is currently structured. For a more complete description of school finance and fiscal management in the State, reference is made to Chapters 41 through 46 of the Texas Education Code, as amended.

Funding for school districts in the State is provided primarily from State and local sources. State funding for all school districts is provided through a set of funding formulas comprising the "Foundation School Program", as well as two facilities funding programs. Generally, the Finance System is designed to promote wealth equalization among school districts by balancing State and local sources of funds available to school districts. In particular, because districts with relatively high levels of property wealth per student can raise more local funding, such districts receive less State aid, and in some cases, are required to disburse local funds to equalize their overall funding relative to other school districts. Conversely, because districts with relatively low levels of property wealth per student have limited access to local funding, the Finance System is designed to provide more State funding to such districts. Thus, as a school district's property wealth per student increases, State funding to the school district is reduced. As a school district's property wealth per student declines, the Finance System is designed to increase that district's State funding. The Finance System provides a similar equalization system for facilities funding wherein

districts with the same tax rate for debt service raise the same amount of combined State and local funding. Facilities funding for debt incurred in prior years is expected to continue in future years; however, State funding for new school facilities has not been consistently appropriated by the Texas Legislature, as further described below.

Local funding is derived from collections of ad valorem taxes levied on property located within each district's boundaries. School districts are authorized to levy two types of property taxes: a limited M&O tax to pay current expenses and an unlimited interest and sinking fund ("I&S") tax to pay debt service on bonds. Generally, under current law, M&O tax rates are subject to a statutory maximum rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value for most school districts (although a few districts can exceed the \$1.17 limit as a result of authorization approved in the 1960s). Current law also requires school districts to demonstrate their ability to pay debt service on outstanding indebtedness through the levy of an ad valorem tax at a rate of not to exceed \$0.50 per \$100 of taxable property at the time bonds are issued. Once bonds are issued, however, districts may levy a tax to pay debt service on such bonds unlimited as to rate or amount (see "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein). As noted above, because property values vary widely among school districts, the amount of local funding generated by the same tax rate is also subject to wide variation among school districts.

### **Local Funding for School Districts**

The primary source of local funding for school districts is collections from ad valorem taxes levied against taxable property located in each school district. Prior to reform legislation that became effective during the 2006-2007 fiscal year (the "Reform Legislation"), the maximum M&O tax rate for most school districts was generally limited to \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. At the time the Reform Legislation was enacted, the majority of school districts were levying an M&O tax rate of \$1.50 per \$100 of taxable value. The Reform Legislation required each school district to "compress" its tax rate by an amount equal to the "State Compression Percentage". The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the State Compression Percentage has been set at 66.67%, effectively setting the maximum compressed M&O tax rate for most school districts at \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value. School districts are permitted, however, to generate additional local funds by raising their M&O tax rate by up to \$0.04 above the compressed tax rate without voter approval (for most districts, up to \$1.04 per \$100 of taxable value). In addition, if the voters approve a tax rate increase through a local referendum, districts may, in general, increase their M&O tax rate up to a maximum M&O tax rate of \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value and receive State equalization funds for such taxing effort (see "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate"). Elections authorizing the levy of M&O taxes held in certain school districts under older laws, however, may subject M&O tax rates in such districts to other limitations (See "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" herein).

### **State Funding for School Districts**

State funding for school districts is provided through the Foundation School Program, which provides each school district with a minimum level of funding (a "Basic Allotment") for each student in average daily attendance ("ADA"). The Basic Allotment is calculated for each school district using various weights and adjustments based on the number of students in average daily attendance and also varies depending on each district's compressed tax rate. This Basic Allotment formula determines most of the allotments making up a district's basic level of funding, referred to as "Tier One" of the Foundation School Program. The basic level of funding is then "enriched" with additional funds known as "Tier Two" of the Foundation School Program. Tier Two provides a guaranteed level of funding for each cent of local tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates above \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value). The Finance System also provides an Existing Debt Allotment ("EDA") to subsidize debt service on eligible outstanding school district bonds, an Instructional Facilities Allotment ("IFA") to subsidize debt service on newly issued bonds, and a New Instructional Facilities Allotment ("NIFA") to subsidize operational expenses associated with the opening of a new instructional facility. IFA primarily addresses the debt service needs of property-poor school districts. In 2017, the 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$1,378,500,000 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium for the EDA, IFA, and NIFA.

Tier One and Tier Two allotments represent the State's share of the cost of M&O expenses of school districts, with local M&O taxes representing the district's local share. EDA and IFA allotments supplement a school district's local I&S taxes levied for debt service on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire and improve facilities. Tier One and Tier Two allotments and existing EDA and IFA allotments are generally required to be funded each year by the Texas Legislature. Since future-year IFA awards were not funded by the Texas Legislature for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium and debt service assistance on school district bonds that are not yet eligible for EDA is not available, debt service on new bonds issued by districts to construct, acquire and improve facilities must be funded solely from local I&S taxes.

Tier One allotments are intended to provide all districts a basic level of education necessary to meet applicable legal standards. Tier Two allotments are intended to guarantee each school district that is not subject to the wealth transfer provisions described below an opportunity to supplement that basic program at a level of its own choice; however, Tier Two allotments may not be used for the payment of debt service or capital outlay.

As described above, the cost of the basic program is based on an allotment per student known as the "Basic Allotment". For the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium, the Basic Allotment is \$5,140 for each student in average daily attendance. The Basic Allotment is then adjusted for all districts by several different weights to account for inherent differences between school districts. These weights consist of (i) a cost adjustment factor intended to address varying economic conditions that affect teacher hiring known as the "cost of education index", (ii) district-size adjustments for small and mid-size districts, and (iii) an adjustment for the sparsity of the district's student population. The cost of education index, district-size and population sparsity adjustments, as applied to the Basic Allotment, create what is referred to as the "Adjusted Allotment". The Adjusted Allotment is used to compute a "regular program allotment", as well as various other allotments associated with educating students with other specified educational needs.

Tier Two supplements the basic funding of Tier One and provides two levels of enrichment with different guaranteed yields (i.e., guaranteed levels of funding by the State) depending on the district's local tax effort. The first six cents of tax effort that exceeds the compressed tax rate (for most districts, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.00 to \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value) will, for most districts, generate the a guaranteed yield of \$99.41 and \$106.28 per cent per weighted student in average daily attendance ("WADA") in the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years, respectively. The second level of Tier Two is generated by tax effort that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents (for most districts eligible for this level of funding, M&O tax rates ranging from \$1.06 to \$1.17 per \$100 of taxable value) and has a guaranteed yield per cent per WADA of \$31.95 for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. Property-wealthy school districts that have an M&O tax rate that exceeds the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents are subject to recapture above this tax rate level at the equivalent wealth per student of \$319,500 (see "Wealth Transfer Provisions" below).

Previously, a district with a compressed tax rate below \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value (known as a "fractionally funded district") received a Basic Allotment which was reduced proportionately to the degree that the district's compressed tax rate fell short of \$1.00. Beginning in the 2017-2018 fiscal year, the compressed tax rate of a fractionally funded district now includes the portion of such district's current M&O tax rate in excess of the first six cents above the district's compressed tax rate until the district's compressed tax rate is equal to the state maximum compressed tax rate of \$1.00. Thus, for fractionally funded districts, each eligible one cent of M&O tax levy above the district's compressed tax rate plus six cents will have a guaranteed yield based on Tier One funding instead of the Tier Two yield, thereby reducing the penalty against the Basic Allotment.

In addition to the operations funding components of the Foundation School Program discussed above, the Foundation School Program provides a facilities funding component consisting of the Instructional Facilities Allotment (IFA) program and the Existing Debt Allotment (EDA) program. These programs assist school districts in funding facilities by, generally, equalizing a district's I&S tax effort. The IFA guarantees each awarded school district a specified amount per student (the "IFA Guaranteed Yield") in State and local funds for each cent of tax effort to pay the principal of and interest on eligible bonds issued to construct, acquire, renovate or improve instructional facilities. The guaranteed yield per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA has been \$35 since this program first began in 1997. New awards of IFA are only available if appropriated funds are allocated for such purpose by the State Legislature. To receive an IFA award, in years where the State Legislature allocates appropriated funds for new IFA awards, a school district must apply to the Commissioner in accordance with rules adopted by the Commissioner before issuing the bonds to be paid with IFA state assistance. The total amount of debt service assistance over a biennium for which a district may be awarded is limited to the lesser of (1) the actual debt service payments made by the district in the biennium in which the bonds are issued; or (2) the greater of (a) \$100,000 or (b) \$250 multiplied by the number of students in ADA. The IFA is also available for lease-purchase agreements and refunding bonds meeting certain prescribed conditions. Once a district receives an IFA award for bonds, it is entitled to continue receiving State assistance for such bonds without reapplying to the Commissioner. The guaranteed level of State and local funds per student per cent of local tax effort applicable to the bonds may not be reduced below the level provided for the year in which the bonds were issued. The 85th State Legislature did not appropriate any funds for new IFA awards for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium; however, awards previously granted in years the State Legislature did appropriate funds for new IFA awards will continue to be funded. State financial assistance is provided for certain existing eligible debt issued by school districts through the EDA program. The EDA guaranteed yield (the "EDA Yield") was the same as the IFA Guaranteed Yield (\$35 per cent of local tax effort per student in ADA). The 85th Texas Legislature changed the EDA Yield to the lesser of (i) \$40 or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation; or (ii) the amount that would result in a total additional EDA of \$60 million more than the EDA to which districts would have been entitled to if the EDA Yield were \$35. The yield for the 2017-2018 fiscal year is approximately \$37. The portion of a district's local debt service rate that qualifies for EDA assistance is limited to the first 29 cents of debt service tax (or a greater amount for any year provided by appropriation by the Texas Legislature). In general, a district's bonds are eligible for EDA assistance if (i) the district made payments on the bonds during the final fiscal year of the preceding State fiscal biennium, or (ii) the district levied taxes to pay the principal of and interest on the bonds for that fiscal year. Each biennium, access to EDA funding is determined by the debt service taxes collected in the final year of the preceding biennium. A district may not receive EDA funding for the principal and interest on a series of otherwise eligible bonds for which the district receives IFA funding.

A district may also qualify for a NIFA allotment, which provides assistance to districts for operational expenses associated with opening new instructional facilities. The 85th Texas Legislature appropriated funds in the amount of \$23,750,000 for each of the 2017-18 and 2018-19 State fiscal years for NIFA allotments.

## **2006 Legislation**

Since the enactment of the Reform Legislation in 2006, most school districts in the State have operated with a "target" funding level per student ("Target Revenue") that is based upon the "hold harmless" principles embodied in the Reform Legislation. This system of Target Revenue was superimposed on the Foundation School Program and made existing funding formulas substantially less important for most school districts. The Reform Legislation was intended to lower M&O tax rates in order to give school districts "meaningful discretion" in setting their M&O tax rates, while holding school districts harmless by providing them with the same level of overall funding they received prior to the enactment of the Reform Legislation. To make up for this shortfall, the Reform Legislation authorized Additional State Aid for Tax Reduction ("ASATR") for each school district in an amount equal to the difference between the amount that each district would receive under the Foundation School Program and the amount of each district's Target Revenue funding level. However, in subsequent legislative sessions, the Texas Legislature has gradually reduced the reliance on ASATR by increasing the funding formulas, and beginning with the 2017-18 school year, the statutes authorizing ASATR are repealed (eliminating revenue targets and ASATR funding).

## **2017 Legislation**

The 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, including the regular session which concluded on May 29, 2017 and the special session which concluded on August 15, 2017, did not enact substantive changes to the Finance System. However, certain bills during the regular session and House Bill 21, which was passed during the special session and signed by the Governor on August 16, 2017, revised certain aspects of the formulas used to determine school district entitlements under the Finance System. In addition to amounts previously discussed, the 85<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature additionally appropriated funds to (i) establish a Financial Hardship Transition Program, which provides grants ("Hardship Grants") to those districts which were heavily reliant on ASATR funding, and (ii) provide an Adjustment for Rapid Decline in Taxable Value of Property ("DPV Decline Adjustment") for districts which experienced a decline in their tax base of more than four percent for tax years 2015 and 2016. A district may receive either a Hardship Grant or a DPV Decline Adjustment, but cannot receive both. In a case where a district would have been eligible to receive funding under both programs, the district will receive the greater of the two amounts.

## **2019 Legislative Session**

On January 8, 2019, the 86th Texas Legislature will convene in general session, scheduled to adjourn on May 27, 2019. Thereafter, the Texas Governor may call one or more additional special sessions. During this time, the Texas Legislature may enact laws that materially change current law as it relates to Texas school finance. The District makes no representation regarding any actions the Texas Legislature may take but intends to monitor proposed legislation for any developments applicable to the District.

## **Wealth Transfer Provisions**

Some districts have sufficient property wealth per student in WADA ("wealth per student") to generate their statutory level of funding through collections of local property taxes alone. Districts whose wealth per student generates local property tax collections in excess of their statutory level of funding are referred to as "Chapter 41" districts because they are subject to the wealth equalization provisions contained in Chapter 41 of the Texas Education Code. Chapter 41 districts may receive State funds for certain competitive grants and a few programs that remain outside the Foundation School Program. Otherwise,



Chapter 41 districts are not eligible to receive State funding. Furthermore, Chapter 41 districts must exercise certain measures in order to reduce their wealth level to equalized wealth levels of funding, as determined by formulas set forth in the Reform Legislation. For most Chapter 41 districts, this equalization process entails paying the portion of the district's local taxes collected in excess of the equalized wealth levels of funding to the State (for redistribution to other school districts) or directly to other school districts with a wealth per student that does not generate local funds sufficient to meet the statutory level of funding, a process known as "recapture".

The equalized wealth levels that subject Chapter 41 districts to recapture for the 2018-2019 State fiscal biennium are set at (i) \$514,000 per student in WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that does not exceed its compressed tax rate (for most districts, the first \$1.00 per \$100 of taxable value) and (ii) \$319,500 per WADA with respect to that portion of a district's M&O tax effort that is beyond its compressed rate plus \$.06 (for most districts, M&O taxes levied above \$1.06 per \$100 in taxable value). So long as the State's equalization program under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code is funded to provide tax revenue equivalent to that raised by the Austin Independent School District on the first six pennies of tax effort that exceed the compressed tax rate, then M&O taxes levied above \$1.00 but at or below \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value ("Golden Pennies") are not subject to the wealth equalization provisions of Chapter 41. Because funding at the Austin Independent School District level is currently being provided to school districts under Chapter 42 of the Texas Education Code, no recapture is currently associated with the Golden Pennies. Chapter 41 districts with a wealth per student above the lower equalized wealth level but below the higher equalized wealth level must equalize their wealth only with respect to the portion of their M&O tax rate, if any, in excess of \$1.06 per \$100 of taxable value. Under Chapter 41, a district has five options to reduce its wealth per student so that it does not exceed the equalized wealth levels: (1) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated district; all property and debt of the consolidating districts vest in the consolidated district; (2) a district may detach property from its territory for annexation by a property-poor district; (3) a district may purchase attendance credits from the State; (4) a district may contract to educate nonresident students from a property-poor district by sending money directly to one or more property-poor districts; or (5) a district may consolidate by agreement with one or more districts to form a consolidated taxing district solely to levy and distribute either M&O taxes or both M&O taxes and I&S taxes. A Chapter 41 district may also exercise any combination of these remedies. Options (3), (4) and (5) require prior approval by the Chapter 41 district's voters.

A district may not adopt a tax rate until its effective wealth per student is at or below the equalized wealth level. If a district fails to exercise a permitted option, the Commissioner must reduce the district's property wealth per student to the equalized wealth level by detaching certain types of property from the district and annexing the property to a property-poor district or, if necessary, consolidate the district with a property-poor district. Provisions governing detachment and annexation of taxable property by the Commissioner do not provide for assumption of any of the transferring district's existing debt. The Commissioner has not been required to detach property in the absence of a district failing to select another wealth-equalization option.

#### **THE SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM AS APPLIED TO THE SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

The District's wealth per student for the 2018-19 school year is greater than the equalized wealth value. Pursuant to Chapter 41, Texas Education Code, the Commissioner has notified the District that its wealth per student exceeds the equalized wealth level set by law. Accordingly, the District has entered into one or more wealth equalization agreements with the Commissioner and/or other school districts for the purpose of implementing permitted wealth equalization options.

A district's wealth per student must be tested for each future school year and, if it exceeds the maximum permitted level, must be reduced by exercise of one of the permitted wealth equalization options. Accordingly, if the District's wealth per student should exceed the maximum permitted level in future school years, it will be required each year to exercise one or more of the wealth reduction options. If the District were to consolidate (or consolidate its tax base for all purposes) with a property-poor district, the outstanding debt of each district could become payable from the consolidated district's combined property tax base, and the District's ratio of taxable property to debt could become diluted. If the District were to detach property voluntarily, a portion of its outstanding debt (including the Bonds) could be assumed by the district to which the property is annexed, in which case timely payment of the Bonds could become dependent in part on the financial performance of the annexing district.

#### **THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM**

*The information below concerning the State Permanent School Fund and the Guarantee Program for school district bonds has been provided by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") and is not guaranteed as to accuracy or completeness by, and is not construed as a representation by the District, the Financial Advisor, or the Purchaser.*

This disclosure statement provides information relating to the program (the "Guarantee Program") administered by the Texas Education Agency (the "TEA") with respect to the Texas Permanent School Fund guarantee of tax-supported bonds issued by Texas school districts and the guarantee of revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of Texas charter districts. The Guarantee Program was authorized by an amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1983 and by Subchapter C of Chapter 45 of the Texas Education Code, as amended (the "Act"). While the Guarantee Program applies to bonds issued by or for both school districts and charter districts, as described below, the Act and the program rules for the two types of districts have some distinctions. For convenience of description and reference, those aspects of the Guarantee Program that are applicable to school district bonds and to charter district bonds are referred to herein as the "School District Bond Guarantee Program" and the "Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," respectively.

Some of the information contained in this Section may include projections or other forward-looking statements regarding future events or the future financial performance of the Texas Permanent School Fund (the "PSF" or the "Fund"). Actual results may differ materially from those contained in any such projections or forward-looking statements.

#### **History and Purpose**

The PSF was created with a \$2,000,000 appropriation by the Texas Legislature (the "Legislature") in 1854 expressly for the benefit of the public schools of Texas. The Constitution of 1876 stipulated that certain lands and all proceeds from the sale of these lands should also constitute the PSF. Additional acts later gave more public domain land and rights to the PSF. In 1953, the U.S. Congress passed the Submerged Lands Act that relinquished to coastal states all rights of the U.S. navigable waters within state boundaries. If the state, by law, had set a larger boundary prior to or at the time of admission to the Union, or if the boundary had been approved by Congress, then the larger boundary applied. After three years of litigation (1957-1960), the U. S. Supreme Court on May 31, 1960, affirmed Texas' historic three marine leagues (10.35 miles) seaward boundary. Texas proved its submerged lands property rights to three leagues into the Gulf of Mexico by citing historic laws and treaties dating back to 1836. All lands lying within that limit belong to the PSF. The proceeds from the sale and the mineral-related rental of these lands, including bonuses, delay rentals and royalty payments, become the corpus of the Fund. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of an amendment to the constitutional provision under which the Fund is established and administered, which occurred on September 13, 2003 (the "Total Return Constitutional Amendment"), and which is further described below, the PSF

had as its main sources of revenues capital gains from securities transactions and royalties from the sale of oil and natural gas. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that interest and dividends produced by Fund investments will be additional revenue to the PSF. The State School Land Board ("SLB") maintains the land endowment of the Fund on behalf of the Fund and is authorized to manage the investments of the capital gains, royalties and other investment income relating to the land endowment. The SLB is a three member board, the membership of which consists of the Commissioner of the Texas General Land Office (the "Land Commissioner") and two citizen members, one appointed by the Governor and one by the Texas Attorney General (the "Attorney General"). As of August 31, 2017, the General Land Office (the "GLO") managed approximately 21% of the PSF, as reflected in the fund balance of the PSF at that date.

The Texas Constitution describes the PSF as "permanent." Prior to the approval by Total Return Constitutional Amendment, only the income produced by the PSF was to be used to complement taxes in financing public education.

On November 8, 1983, the voters of the State approved a constitutional amendment that provides for the guarantee by the PSF of bonds issued by school districts. On approval by the State Commissioner of Education (the "Commissioner"), bonds properly issued by a school district are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. See "The School District Bond Guarantee Program."

In 2011, legislation was enacted that established the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as a new component of the Guarantee Program. That legislation authorized the use of the PSF to guarantee revenue bonds issued by or for the benefit of certain open-enrollment charter schools that are designated as "charter districts" by the Commissioner. On approval by the Commissioner, bonds properly issued by a charter district participating in the Program are fully guaranteed by the corpus of the PSF. As described below, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was deferred pending receipt of guidance from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") which was received in September 2013, and the establishment of regulations to govern the program, which regulations became effective on March 3, 2014. See "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program."

State law also permits charter schools to be chartered and operated by school districts and other political subdivisions, but bond financing of facilities for school district-operated charter schools is subject to the School District Bond Guarantee Program, not the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

While the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program relate to different types of bonds issued for different types of Texas public schools, and have different program regulations and requirements, a bond guaranteed under either part of the Guarantee Program has the same effect with respect to the guarantee obligation of the Fund thereto, and all guaranteed bonds are aggregated for purposes of determining the capacity of the Guarantee Program (see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program"). The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program as enacted by State law has not been reviewed by any court, nor has the Texas Attorney General been requested to issue an opinion, with respect to its constitutional validity.

The sole purpose of the PSF is to assist in the funding of public education for present and future generations. Prior to the adoption of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, all interest and dividends produced by Fund investments flowed into the Available School Fund (the "ASF"), where they are distributed to local school districts and open-enrollment charter schools based on average daily attendance. Any net gains from investments of the Fund accrue to the corpus of the PSF. Prior to the approval by the voters of the State of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, costs of administering the PSF were allocated to the ASF. With the approval of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment, the administrative costs of the Fund have shifted from the ASF to the PSF. In fiscal year 2018, preliminary, unaudited distributions to the ASF amounted to an estimated \$246.92 per student and the total amount distributed to the ASF was \$1,235.8 million.

Audited financial information for the PSF is provided annually through the PSF Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (the "Annual Report"), which is filed with the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board ("MSRB"). The Annual Report includes the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund (the "Message") and the Management's Discussion and Analysis ("MD&A"). The Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, as filed with the MSRB in accordance with the PSF undertaking and agreement made in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 ("Rule 15c2-12") of the federal Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), as described below, is hereby incorporated by reference into this disclosure. Information included herein for the year ended August 31, 2017 is derived from the audited financial statements of the PSF, which are included in the Annual Report when it is filed and posted. Reference is made to the Annual Report for the complete Message and MD&A for the year ended August 31, 2017 and for a description of the financial results of the PSF for the year ended August 31, 2017, the most recent year for which audited financial information regarding the Fund is available. The 2017 Annual Report speaks only as of its date and the TEA has not obligated itself to update the 2017 Annual Report or any other Annual Report. The TEA posts each Annual Report, which includes statistical data regarding the Fund as of the close of each fiscal year, the most recent disclosure for the Guarantee Program, the Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund, which is codified at 19 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 33 (the "Investment Policy"), monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program (collectively, the "Web Site Materials") on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/) and with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such monthly updates regarding the Guarantee Program are also incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes. In addition to the Web Site Materials, the Fund is required to make quarterly filings with the SEC under Section 13(f) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Such filings, which consist of a list of the Fund's holdings of securities specified in Section 13(f), including exchange-traded (e.g., NYSE) or NASDAQ-quoted stocks, equity options and warrants, shares of closed-end investment companies and certain convertible debt securities, is available from the SEC at [www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml](http://www.sec.gov/edgar.shtml). A list of the Fund's equity and fixed income holdings as of August 31 of each year is posted to the TEA web site and filed with the MSRB. Such list excludes holdings in the Fund's securities lending program. Such list, as filed, is incorporated herein and made a part hereof for all purposes.

### **The Total Return Constitutional Amendment**

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment approved a fundamental change in the way that distributions are made to the ASF from the PSF. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that PSF distributions to the ASF be determined using a total-return-based formula instead of the current-income-based formula, which was used from 1964 to the end of the 2003 fiscal year. The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that the total amount distributed from the Fund to the ASF: (1) in each year of a State fiscal biennium must be an amount that is not more than 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property (the "Distribution Rate"), on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium (the "Distribution Measurement Period"), in accordance with the rate adopted by: (a) a vote of two-thirds of the total membership of the State Board of Education ("SBOE"), taken before the Regular Session of the Legislature convenes or (b) the Legislature by general law or appropriation, if the SBOE does not adopt a rate as provided by clause (a); and (2) over the ten-year period consisting of the current State fiscal year and the nine preceding state fiscal years may not exceed the total return on all investment assets of the Fund over the same ten-year period (the "Ten Year Total Return"). In April 2009, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0707 (2009)

("GA-0707"), at the request of the Chairman of the SBOE with regard to certain matters pertaining to the Distribution Rate and the determination of the Ten Year Total Return. In GA-0707 the Attorney General opined, among other advice, that (i) the Ten Year Total Return should be calculated on an annual basis, (ii) a contingency plan adopted by the SBOE, to permit monthly transfers equal in aggregate to the annual Distribution Rate to be halted and subsequently made up if such transfers temporarily exceeded the Ten Year Total Return, is not prohibited by State law, provided that such contingency plan applies only within a fiscal year time basis, not on a biennium basis, and (iii) that the amount distributed from the Fund in a fiscal year may not exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund or the Ten Year Total Return. In accordance with GA-0707, in the event that the Ten Year Total Return is exceeded during a fiscal year, transfers to the ASF will be halted. However, if the Ten Year Total Return subsequently increases during that biennium, transfers may be resumed, if the SBOE has provided for that contingency, and made in full during the remaining period of the biennium, subject to the limit of 6% in any one fiscal year. Any shortfall in the transfer that results from such events from one biennium may not be paid over to the ASF in a subsequent biennium as the SBOE would make a separate payout determination for that subsequent biennium.

In determining the Distribution Rate, the SBOE has adopted the goal of maximizing the amount distributed from the Fund in a manner designed to preserve "intergenerational equity." Intergenerational equity is the maintenance of purchasing power to ensure that endowment spending keeps pace with inflation, with the ultimate goal being to ensure that current and future generations are given equal levels of purchasing power in real terms. In making this determination, the SBOE takes into account various considerations, and relies upon its staff and external investment consultant, which undertake analysis for long-term projection periods that includes certain assumptions. Among the assumptions used in the analysis are a projected rate of growth of the average daily scholastic attendance State-wide, the projected contributions and expenses of the Fund, projected returns in the capital markets and a projected inflation rate.

See "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below for a discussion of the historic and current Distribution Rates, and a description of amendments made to the Texas Constitution on November 8, 2011 that may affect Distribution Rate decisions.

Since the enactment of a prior amendment to the Texas Constitution in 1964, the investment of the Fund has been managed with the dual objectives of producing current income for transfer to the ASF and growing the Fund for the benefit of future generations. As a result of this prior constitutional framework, prior to the adoption of the 2004 asset allocation policy the investment of the Fund historically included a significant amount of fixed income investments and dividend-yielding equity investments, to produce income for transfer to the ASF.

With respect to the management of the Fund's financial assets portfolio, the single most significant change made to date as a result of the Total Return Constitutional Amendment has been new asset allocation policies adopted from time to time by the SBOE. The SBOE generally reviews the asset allocations during its summer meeting in even numbered years. The first asset allocation policy adopted by the SBOE following the Total Return Constitutional Amendment was in February 2004, and the policy was reviewed and modified or reaffirmed in the summers of each even-numbered year, most recently in 2018. The Fund's investment policy provides for minimum and maximum ranges among the components of each of the asset classifications: equities, fixed income and alternative asset investments. The 2004 asset allocation policy decreased the fixed income target from 45% to 25% of Fund investment assets and increased the allocation for equities from 55% to 75% of investment assets. Subsequent asset allocation policies have continued to diversify Fund assets, and have added an alternative asset allocation to the fixed income and equity allocations. The alternative asset allocation category includes real estate, real return, absolute return and private equity components. Alternative asset classes diversify the SBOE-managed assets and are not as correlated to traditional asset classes, which is intended to increase investment returns over the long run while reducing risk and return volatility of the portfolio. The most recent asset allocation, from 2016, which was reviewed and reaffirmed in June 2018, is as follows: (i) an equity allocation of 35% (consisting of U.S. large cap equities targeted at 13%, international equities at 14% and emerging international equities at 3%) and U.S. small/mid cap equities at 5%), (ii) a fixed income allocation of 19% (consisting of a 12% allocation for core bonds and a 7% allocation for emerging market debt in local currency) and (iii) an alternative asset allocation of 46% (consisting of a private equity allocation of 13%, a real estate allocation of 10%, an absolute return allocation of 10%, a risk parity allocation of 7% and a real return allocation of 6%). The 2016 asset allocation decreased U.S. large cap equities and international equities by 3% and 2%, respectively, and increased the allocations for private equity and real estate by 3% and 2%, respectively.

For a variety of reasons, each change in asset allocation for the Fund, including the 2016 modifications, have been implemented in phases, and that approach is likely to be carried forward when and if the asset allocation policy is again modified. At August 31, 2018, the Fund's financial assets portfolio was invested as follows: 40.54% in public market equity investments; 13.25% in fixed income investments; 10.37% in absolute return assets; 9.12% in private equity assets; 7.48% in real estate assets; 6.79% in risk parity assets; 5.96% in real return assets; 6.21% in emerging market debt; and 0.28% in unallocated cash. August 31, 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

Following on previous decisions to create strategic relationships with investment managers in certain asset classes, in September 2015 and January 2016, the SBOE approved the implementation of direct investment programs in private equity and absolute return assets, respectively, which has continued to reduce administrative costs with respect to those portfolios. The Attorney General has advised the SBOE in Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0998 (2013) ("GA-0998"), that the PSF is not subject to requirements of certain State competitive bidding laws with respect to the selection of investments. In GA-0998, the Attorney General also advised that the SBOE generally must use competitive bidding for the selection of investment managers and other third party providers of investment services, such as record keeping and insurance, but excluding certain professional services, such as accounting services, as State law prohibits the use of competitive bidding for specified professional services. GA-0998 provides guidance to the SBOE in connection with the direct management of alternative investments through investment vehicles to be created by the SBOE, in lieu of contracting with external managers for such services, as has been the recent practice of the PSF. The PSF staff and the Fund's investment advisor are tasked with advising the SBOE with respect to the implementation of the Fund's asset allocation policy, including the timing and manner of the selection of any external managers and other consultants.

In accordance with the Texas Constitution, the SBOE views the PSF as a perpetual institution, and the Fund is managed as an endowment fund with a long-term investment horizon. Under the total-return investment objective, the Investment Policy provides that the PSF shall be managed consistently with respect to the following: generating income for the benefit of the public free schools of Texas, the real growth of the corpus of the PSF, protecting capital, and balancing the needs of present and future generations of Texas school children. As described above, the Total Return Constitutional Amendment restricts the annual payout from the Fund to the total-return on all investment assets of the Fund over a rolling ten-year period. State law provides that each transfer of funds from the PSF to the ASF is made monthly, with each transfer to be in the amount of one-twelfth of the annual distribution. The heavier weighting of equity securities and alternative assets relative to fixed income investments has resulted in greater volatility of the value of the Fund. Given the greater weighting in the overall portfolio of passively managed investments, it is expected that the Fund will reflect the general performance returns of the markets in which the Fund is invested.

The asset allocation of the Fund's financial assets portfolio is subject to change by the SBOE from time to time based upon a number of factors, including recommendations to the SBOE made by internal investment staff and external consultants, changes made by the SBOE without regard to such recommendations and directives of the Legislature. Fund performance may also be affected by factors other than asset allocation, including, without limitation, the general performance of the securities markets in the United States and abroad; political and investment considerations including those relating to socially responsible investing; economic impacts relating to domestic and international climate change; development of hostilities in and among nations; cybersecurity issues that affect the securities markets, changes in international trade policies, economic activity and investments, in general, application of the prudent person investment standard, which may eliminate certain investment opportunities for the Fund; management fees paid to external managers and embedded management fees for some fund investments; and limitations on the number and compensation of internal and external investment staff, which is subject to legislative oversight. The Guarantee Program could also be impacted by changes in State or federal law or the implementation of new accounting standards.

### **Management and Administration of the Fund**

The Texas Constitution and applicable statutes delegate to the SBOE the authority and responsibility for investment of the PSF's financial assets. In investing the Fund, the SBOE is charged with exercising the judgment and care under the circumstances then prevailing which persons of ordinary prudence, discretion and intelligence exercise in the management of their own affairs, not in regard to speculation, but in regard to the permanent disposition of their funds, considering the probable income therefrom as well as the probable safety of their capital. The SBOE has adopted a "Statement of Investment Objectives, Policies, and Guidelines of the Texas Permanent School Fund," which is codified in the Texas Administrative Code beginning at 19 TAC section 33.1.

The Total Return Constitutional Amendment provides that expenses of managing the PSF are to be paid "by appropriation" from the PSF. In January 2005, at the request of the SBOE, the Attorney General issued a legal opinion, Op. Tex. Att'y Gen. No. GA-0293 (2005), that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment requires that SBOE expenditures for managing or administering PSF investments, including payments to external investment managers, be paid from appropriations made by the Legislature, but that the Total Return Constitutional Amendment does not require the SBOE to pay from such appropriated PSF funds the indirect management costs deducted from the assets of a mutual fund or other investment company in which PSF funds have been invested.

Texas law assigns control of the Fund's land and mineral rights to the three-member SLB, which consists of the elected Commissioner of the GLO, an appointee of the Governor, and an appointee of the Attorney General. Administrative duties related to the land and mineral rights reside with the GLO, which is under the guidance of the Commissioner of the GLO. In 2007, the Legislature established the real estate special fund account of the PSF (the "Real Estate Account") consisting of proceeds and revenue from land, mineral or royalty interest, real estate investment, or other interest, including revenue received from those sources, that is set apart to the PSF under the Texas Constitution and laws, together with the mineral estate in riverbeds, channels, and the tidelands, including islands. The investment of the Real Estate Account is subject to the sole and exclusive management and control of the SLB and the Land Commissioner, who is also the head of the GLO. The 2007 legislation presented constitutional questions regarding the respective roles of the SBOE and the SLB relating to the disposition of proceeds of real estate transactions to the ASF, among other questions. Amounts in the investment portfolio of the PSF are taken into account by the SBOE for purposes of determining the Distribution Rate. An amendment to the Texas Constitution was approved by State voters on November 8, 2011, which permits the SLB to make transfers directly to the ASF, see "2011 Constitutional Amendment" below.

The SBOE contracts with its securities custodial agent to measure the performance of the total return of the Fund's financial assets. A consultant is typically retained for the purpose of providing consultation with respect to strategic asset allocation decisions and to assist the SBOE in selecting external fund management advisors. The SBOE also contracts with financial institutions for custodial and securities lending services. Like other State agencies and instrumentalities that manage large investment portfolios, the PSF has implemented an incentive compensation plan that may provide additional compensation for investment personnel, depending upon the criteria relating to the investment performance of the Fund.

As noted above, the Texas Constitution and applicable statutes make the SBOE responsible for investment of the PSF's financial assets. By law, the Commissioner is appointed by the Governor, with Senate confirmation, and assists the SBOE, but the Commissioner can neither be hired nor dismissed by the SBOE. The Executive Administrator of the Fund is also hired by and reports to the Commissioner. Moreover, although the Fund's Executive Administrator and his staff implement the decisions of and provide information to the School Finance/PSF Committee of the SBOE and the full SBOE, the SBOE can neither select nor dismiss the Executive Administrator. TEA's General Counsel provides legal advice to the Executive Administrator and to the SBOE. The SBOE has also engaged outside counsel to advise it as to its duties over the Fund, including specific actions regarding the investment of the PSF to ensure compliance with fiduciary standards, and to provide transactional advice in connection with the investment of Fund assets in non-traditional investments.

### **Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program**

The capacity of the Fund to guarantee bonds under the Guarantee Program is limited in two ways: by State law (the "State Capacity Limit") and by regulations and a notice issued by the IRS (the "IRS Limit"). Prior to May 20, 2003, the State Capacity Limit was equal to two times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets, exclusive of real estate. During the 78th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2003, legislation was enacted that increased the State Capacity Limit by 25%, to two and one half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets as estimated by the SBOE and certified by the State Auditor, and eliminated the real estate exclusion from the calculation. Prior to the issuance of the IRS Notice (defined below), the capacity of the program under the IRS Limit was limited to two and one-half times the lower of cost or fair market value of the Fund's assets adjusted by a factor that excluded additions to the Fund made since May 14, 1989. During the 2007 Texas Legislature, Senate Bill 389 ("SB 389") was enacted providing for additional increases in the capacity of the Guarantee Program, and specifically providing that the SBOE may by rule increase the capacity of the Guarantee Program from two and one-half times the cost value of the PSF to an amount not to exceed five times the cost value of the PSF, provided that the increased limit does not violate federal law and regulations and does not prevent bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program from receiving the highest available credit rating, as determined by the SBOE. SB 389 further provides that the SBOE shall at least annually consider whether to change the capacity of the Guarantee Program. From 2005 through 2009, the Guarantee Program twice reached capacity under the IRS Limit, and in each instance the Guarantee Program was closed to new bond guarantee applications until relief was obtained from the IRS. The most recent closure of the Guarantee Program commenced in March 2009 and the Guarantee Program reopened in February 2010 on the basis of receipt of the IRS Notice.

On December 16, 2009, the IRS published Notice 2010-5 (the "IRS Notice") stating that the IRS will issue proposed regulations amending the existing regulations to raise the IRS limit to 500% of the total cost of the assets held by the PSF as of December 16, 2009. In accordance with the IRS Notice, the amount of any new bonds to be guaranteed by the PSF, together with the then

outstanding amount of bonds previously guaranteed by the PSF, must not exceed the IRS limit on the sale date of the new bonds to be guaranteed. The IRS Notice further provides that the IRS Notice may be relied upon for bonds sold on or after December 16, 2009, and before the effective date of future regulations or other public administrative guidance affecting funds like the PSF.

On September 16, 2013, the IRS published proposed regulations (the "Proposed IRS Regulations") that, among other things, would enact the IRS Notice. The preamble to the Proposed IRS Regulations provides that issuers may elect to apply the Proposed IRS Regulations, in whole or in part, to bonds sold on or after September 16, 2013, and before the date that final regulations become effective.

On July 18, 2016, the IRS issued final regulations enacting the IRS Notice (the "Final IRS Regulations"). The Final IRS Regulations are effective for bonds sold on or after October 17, 2016. The IRS Notice, the Proposed IRS Regulations and the Final IRS Regulations establish a static capacity for the Guarantee Program based upon the cost value of Fund assets on December 16, 2009 multiplied by five. On December 16, 2009, the cost value of the Guarantee Program was \$23,463,730,608 (estimated and unaudited), thereby producing an IRS Limit of approximately \$117.3 billion. The State Capacity Limit is determined on the basis of the cost value of the Fund from time to time multiplied by the capacity multiplier determined annually by the SBOE, but not to exceed a multiplier of five. The capacity of the Guarantee Program will be limited to the lower of the State Capacity Limit or the IRS Limit. On May 21, 2010, the SBOE modified the regulations that govern the School District Bond Guarantee Program (the "SDBGP Rules"), and increased the State Law Capacity to an amount equal to three times the cost value of the PSF. Such modified regulations, including the revised capacity rule, became effective on July 1, 2010. The SDBGP Rules provide that the Commissioner may reduce the multiplier to maintain the AAA credit rating of the Guarantee Program, but provide that any changes to the multiplier made by the Commissioner are to be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at the next meeting following the change. See "Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds," below.

At its September 2015 meeting, the SBOE voted to modify the SDBGP Rules and the CDBGP Rules to increase the State Law Capacity from 3 times the cost value multiplier to 3.25 times. At that meeting, the SBOE also approved a new 5% capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. The change to the State Law Capacity became effective on February 1, 2016. At its November 2016 meeting, the SBOE again voted to increase the State Law Capacity and, in accordance with applicable requirements for the modification of SDBGP and CDBGP Rules, a second and final vote to approve the increase in the State Law Capacity occurred on February 3, 2017. As a result, the State Law Capacity increased from 3.25 times the cost value multiplier to 3.50 times effective March 1, 2017 and increased again to 3.75 times effective September 1, 2017; however, as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the SBOE took action at its Winter 2018 meeting to rollback of a portion of the multiplier increase, which became effective in late March 2018. Based upon the unaudited cost basis of the Fund at August 31, 2018, the State Law Capacity increased from \$111,568,711,072 on August 31, 2017 to \$118,867,137,998 on August 31, 2018 (but at such date the IRS Limit was lower, \$117,318,653,038, so it is the currently effective capacity limit for the Fund).

Since July 1991, when the SBOE amended the Guarantee Program Rules to broaden the range of bonds that are eligible for guarantee under the Guarantee Program to encompass most Texas school district bonds, the principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program has increased sharply. In addition, in recent years a number of factors have caused an increase in the amount of bonds issued by school districts in the State. See the table "Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds" below. Effective September 1, 2009, the Act provides that the SBOE may annually establish a percentage of the cost value of the Fund to be reserved from use in guaranteeing bonds. The capacity of the Guarantee Program in excess of any reserved portion is referred to herein as the "Capacity Reserve." The SDBGP Rules provide for a minimum Capacity Reserve for the overall Guarantee Program of no less than 5%, and provide that the amount of the Capacity Reserve may be increased by a majority vote of the SBOE. The CDBGP Rules provide for an additional 5% reserve of CDBGP capacity. The Commissioner is authorized to change the Capacity Reserve, which decision must be ratified or rejected by the SBOE at its next meeting following any change made by the Commissioner. The current Capacity Reserve is noted in the monthly updates with respect to the capacity of the Guarantee Program on the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Permanent_School_Fund/), which are also filed with the MSRB.

Based upon historical performance of the Fund, the legal restrictions relating to the amount of bonds that may be guaranteed has generally resulted in a lower ratio of guaranteed bonds to available assets as compared to many other types of credit enhancements that may be available for Texas school district bonds and charter district bonds. However, changes in the value of the Fund due to changes in securities markets, investment objectives of the Fund, an increase in bond issues by school districts in the State or legal restrictions on the Fund, the implementation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, or an increase in the calculation base of the Fund for purposes of making transfers to the ASF, among other factors, could adversely affect the ratio of Fund assets to guaranteed bonds and the growth of the Fund in general. It is anticipated that the issuance of the IRS Notice and the Proposed IRS Regulations will likely result in a substantial increase in the amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program. The implementation of the Charter School Bond Guarantee Program is also expected to increase the amount of guaranteed bonds.

The Act requires that the Commissioner prepare, and the SBOE approve, an annual report on the status of the Guarantee Program (the Annual Report). The State Auditor audits the financial statements of the PSF, which are separate from other State financial statements.

### **The School District Bond Guarantee Program**

The School District Bond Guarantee Program requires an application be made by a school district to the Commissioner for a guarantee of its bonds. If the conditions for the School District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

In the event of default, holders of guaranteed school district bonds will receive all payments due from the corpus of the PSF. Following a determination that a school district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on any guaranteed bond, the Act requires the school district to notify the Commissioner not later than the fifth day before the stated maturity date of such bond or interest payment. Immediately following receipt of such notice, the Commissioner must cause to be transferred from the appropriate account in the PSF to the Paying Agent/Registrar an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal and interest. Upon receipt of funds for payment of such principal or interest, the Paying Agent/Registrar must pay the amount due and forward the canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest to the State Comptroller of Public Accounts (the "Comptroller"). The Commissioner will instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid, plus interest, from the first State money payable to the school district. The amount withheld pursuant to this funding "intercept" feature will be deposited to the credit of the PSF. The Comptroller must hold such canceled bond or evidence of payment of the interest on behalf of the PSF. Following full reimbursement of such payment by the school district to the PSF with interest, the Comptroller will cancel the

bond or evidence of payment of the interest and forward it to the school district. The Act permits the Commissioner to order a school district to set a tax rate sufficient to reimburse the PSF for any payments made with respect to guaranteed bonds, and also sufficient to pay future payments on guaranteed bonds, and provides certain enforcement mechanisms to the Commissioner, including the appointment of a board of managers or annexation of a defaulting school district to another school district.

If a school district fails to pay principal or interest on a bond as it is stated to mature, other amounts not due and payable are not accelerated and do not become due and payable by virtue of the district's default. The School District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a school district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed school district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond order provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a school district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

In the event that two or more payments are made from the PSF on behalf of a district, the Commissioner shall request the Attorney General to institute legal action to compel the district and its officers, agents and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in respect to the payment of guaranteed bonds.

Generally, the SDBGP Rules limit guarantees to certain types of notes and bonds, including, with respect to refunding bonds issued by school districts, a requirement that the bonds produce debt service savings, and that bonds issued for capital facilities of school districts must have been voted as unlimited tax debt of the issuing district. The Guarantee Program Rules include certain accreditation criteria for districts applying for a guarantee of their bonds, and limit guarantees to districts that have less than the amount of annual debt service per average daily attendance that represents the 90th percentile of annual debt service per average daily attendance for all school districts, but such limitation will not apply to school districts that have enrollment growth of at least 25% over the previous five school years. The SDBGP Rules are codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC section 33.65, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.65>.

### **The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective March 3, 2014. The SBOE published final regulations in the Texas Register that provide for the administration of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Rules"). The CDBGP Rules are codified at 19 TAC section 33.67, and are available at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.67>.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program has been authorized through the enactment of amendments to the Act, which provide that a charter holder may make application to the Commissioner for designation as a "charter district" and for a guarantee by the PSF under the Act of bonds issued on behalf of a charter district by a non-profit corporation. If the conditions for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program are satisfied, the guarantee becomes effective upon approval of the bonds by the Attorney General and remains in effect until the guaranteed bonds are paid or defeased, by a refunding or otherwise.

As of February 21, 2018 (the most recent date for which data is available), the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools (excluding charter schools authorized by school districts) to the total State scholastic census was approximately 5.5%. As of November 5, 2018, there were 177 active open-enrollment charter schools in the State and there were 754 charter school campuses operating under such charters. Section 12.101, Texas Education Code, as amended by the Legislature in 2013, limits the number of charters that the Commissioner may grant to 215 charters as of the end of fiscal year 2014, with the number increasing in each fiscal year thereafter through 2019 to a total number of 305 charters. While legislation limits the number of charters that may be granted, it does not limit the number of campuses that may operate under a particular charter. For information regarding the capacity of the Guarantee Program, see "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program." The Act provides that the Commissioner may not approve the guarantee of refunding or refinanced bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program in a total amount that exceeds one-half of the total amount available for the guarantee of charter district bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

In accordance with the Act, the Commissioner may not approve charter district bonds for guarantee if such guarantees will result in lower bond ratings for public school district bonds that are guaranteed under the School District Bond Guarantee Program. To be eligible for a guarantee, the Act provides that a charter district's bonds must be approved by the Attorney General, have an unenhanced investment grade rating from a nationally recognized investment rating firm, and satisfy a limited investigation conducted by the TEA.

The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program does not apply to the payment of principal and interest upon redemption of bonds, except upon mandatory sinking fund redemption, and does not apply to the obligation, if any, of a charter district to pay a redemption premium on its guaranteed bonds. The guarantee applies to all matured interest on guaranteed charter district bonds, whether the bonds were issued with a fixed or variable interest rate and whether the interest rate changes as a result of an interest reset provision or other bond resolution provision requiring an interest rate change. The guarantee does not extend to any obligation of a charter district under any agreement with a third party relating to guaranteed bonds that is defined or described in State law as a "bond enhancement agreement" or a "credit agreement," unless the right to payment of such third party is directly as a result of such third party being a bondholder.

The Act provides that immediately following receipt of notice that a charter district will be or is unable to pay maturing or matured principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the Charter District Reserve Fund to the district's paying agent an amount necessary to pay the maturing or matured principal or interest. If money in the Charter District Reserve Fund is insufficient to pay the amount due on a bond for which a notice of default has been received, the Commissioner is required to instruct the Comptroller to transfer from the PSF to the district's paying agent the amount necessary to pay the balance of the unpaid maturing or matured principal or interest. If a total of two or more payments are made under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program on charter district bonds and the Commissioner determines that the charter district is acting in bad faith under the program, the Commissioner may request the Attorney General to institute appropriate legal action to compel the charter district and its officers, agents, and employees to comply with the duties required of them by law in regard to the guaranteed bonds. As is the case with the School District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act provides a funding "intercept" feature that obligates the Commissioner to instruct the Comptroller to withhold the amount paid with respect to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, plus interest, from the first State money payable to a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds. The amount withheld will be deposited, first, to the credit of the PSF, and then to restore any amount drawn from the Charter District Reserve Fund as a result of the non-payment.

The CDBGP Rules provide that the PSF may be used to guarantee bonds issued for the acquisition, construction, repair, or renovation of an educational facility for an open-enrollment charter holder and equipping real property of an open-enrollment

charter school and/or to refinance promissory notes executed by an open-enrollment charter school, each in an amount in excess of \$500,000 the proceeds of which loans were used for a purposes described above (so-called new money bonds) or for refinancing bonds previously issued for the charter school that were approved by the attorney general (so-called refunding bonds). Refunding bonds may not be guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program if they do not result in a present value savings to the charter holder.

The CDBGP Rules provide that an open-enrollment charter holder applying for charter district designation and a guarantee of its bonds under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program satisfy various provisions of the regulations, including the following: It must (i) have operated at least one open-enrollment charter school with enrolled students in the State for at least three years; (ii) agree that the bonded indebtedness for which the guarantee is sought will be undertaken as an obligation of all entities under common control of the open-enrollment charter holder, and that all such entities will be liable for the obligation if the open-enrollment charter holder defaults on the bonded indebtedness, provided, however, that an entity that does not operate a charter school in Texas is subject to this provision only to the extent it has received state funds from the open-enrollment charter holder; (iii) have had completed for the past three years an audit for each such year that included unqualified or unmodified audit opinions; and (iv) have received an investment grade credit rating within the last year. Upon receipt of an application for guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Commissioner is required to conduct an investigation into the financial status of the applicant charter district and of the accreditation status of all open-enrollment charter schools operated under the charter, within the scope set forth in the CDBGP Rules. Such financial investigation must establish that an applying charter district has a historical debt service coverage ratio, based on annual debt service, of at least 1.1 for the most recently completed fiscal year, and a projected debt service coverage ratio, based on projected revenues and expenses and maximum annual debt service, of at least 1.2. The failure of an open-enrollment charter holder to comply with the Act or the applicable regulations, including by making any material misrepresentations in the charter holder's application for charter district designation or guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, constitutes a material violation of the open-enrollment charter holder's charter.

Beginning in July 2015, TEA began limiting new guarantees under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to conform to the Act and, subsequently, with CDBGP Rules that require the maintenance of a capacity reserve for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Following the increase in the Program multiplier in February 2016 and the update of the percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census in March 2016, some new capacity became available under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but that capacity was quickly exhausted. In accordance with the action of the SBOE on February 3, 2017, additional capacity for the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program became effective in two increments, implemented on March 1, 2017 and on September 1, 2017 (as described under "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," an item to reverse the September 1, 2017 increase in the Program multiplier was approved by the SBOE at its Winter 2018 meeting). In addition, legislation enacted during the Legislature's 2017 regular session modifies the manner of calculating the capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program (the "CDBGP Capacity"), which further increases the amount of the CDBGP Capacity, beginning with State fiscal year 2018, but that provision of the law does not increase overall Program capacity, it merely allocates capacity between the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. See "Capacity Limits for the Guarantee Program" and "2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program." Other factors that could increase the CDBGP Capacity include Fund investment performance, future increases in the Guarantee Program multiplier, changes in State law that govern the calculation of the CDBGP Capacity, as described below, growth in the relative percentage of students enrolled in open-enrollment charter schools to the total State scholastic census, legislative and administrative changes in funding for charter districts, changes in level of school district or charter district participation in the Program, or a combination of such circumstances.

### **2017 Legislative Changes to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program**

The CDBGP Capacity is established by the Act. During the 85th Texas Legislature, which concluded on May 29, 2017, Senate Bill 1480 ("SB 1480") was enacted. The complete text of SB 1480 can be found at <http://www.capitol.state.tx.us/tlodocs/85R/billtext/pdf/SB01480F.pdf#navpanes=0>. SB 1480 modified how the CDBGP Capacity will be established under the Act effective as of September 1, 2017, and made other substantive changes to the Act that affects the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. Prior to the enactment of SB 1480, the CDBGP Capacity was calculated as the State Capacity Limit less the amount of outstanding bond guarantees under the Guarantee Program multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population. As of September 30, 2018, the amount of outstanding bond guarantees represented 68.04% of the IRS Limit (which is currently the applicable capacity limit) for the Guarantee Program (based on unaudited data). SB 1480 amended the CDBGP Capacity calculation so that the State Capacity Limit is multiplied by the percentage of charter district scholastic population relative to the total public school scholastic population prior to the subtraction of the outstanding bond guarantees, thereby potentially substantially increasing the CDBGP Capacity. However, certain provisions of SB 1480, described below, and other additional factors described herein, could result in less than the maximum amount of the potential increase provided by SB 1480 being implemented by the SBOE or otherwise used by charter districts. Still other factors used in determining the CDBGP Capacity, such as the percentage of the charter district scholastic population to the overall public school scholastic population, could, in and of itself, increase the CDBGP Capacity, as that percentage has grown from 3.53% in September, 2012 to 5.50% in September 2018, representing a cumulative growth during that period of 55.81%. TEA is unable to predict how the ratio of charter district students to the total State scholastic population will change over time.

SB 1480 provides that the implementation of the new method of calculating the CDBGP Capacity will begin with the State fiscal year that commences September 1, 2021 (the State's fiscal year 2022). However, for the intervening four fiscal years, beginning with fiscal year 2018, SB 1480 provides that the SBOE may establish a CDBGP Capacity that increases the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed by up to a cumulative 20% in each fiscal year (for a total maximum increase of 80% in fiscal year 2021) as compared to the capacity figure calculated under the Act as of January 1, 2017. However, SB 1480 provides that in making its annual determination of the magnitude of an increase for any year, the SBOE may establish a lower (or no) increase if the SBOE determines that an increase in the CDBGP Capacity would likely result in a negative impact on the bond ratings for the Bond Guarantee Program (see "Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program") or if one or more charter districts default on payment of principal or interest on a guaranteed bond, resulting in a negative impact on the bond ratings of the Bond Guarantee Program. The provisions of SB 1480 that provide for discretionary, incremental increases in the CDBGP expire September 1, 2022. If the SBOE makes a determination for any year based upon the potential ratings impact on the Bond Guarantee Program and modifies the increase that would otherwise be implemented under SB 1480 for that year, the SBOE may also make appropriate adjustments to the schedule for subsequent years to reflect the modification, provided that the CDBGP Capacity for any year may not exceed the limit provided in the schedule set forth in SB 1480. In September 2017 and June 2018, the SBOE authorized the full 20% increase in the amount of charter district bonds that may be guaranteed for fiscal years 2018 and 2019, respectively, which increases the relative capacity of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program to the School District Bond Guarantee Program for those fiscal years.

Taking into account the enactment of SB 1480 and the increase in the CDBGP Capacity effected thereby, at Winter 2018 meeting the SBOE approved the second of two required readings amending the SDBGP Rules to rollback the multiplier from 3.75 times market value to 3.50 times, and the rollback became effective in late March 2018.

In addition to modifying the manner of determining the CDBGP Capacity, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner, in making a determination as to whether to approve a guarantee for a charter district, may consider any additional reasonable factor that the Commissioner determines to be necessary to protect the Bond Guarantee Program or minimize risk to the PSF, including: (1) whether the charter district had an average daily attendance of more than 75 percent of its student capacity for each of the preceding three school years, or for each school year of operation if the charter district has not been in operation for the preceding three school years; (2) the performance of the charter district under certain performance criteria set forth in Education Code Sections 39.053 and 39.054; and (3) any other indicator of performance that could affect the charter district's financial performance. Also, SB 1480 provides that the Commissioner's investigation of a charter district application for guarantee may include an evaluation of whether the charter district bond security documents provide a security interest in real property pledged as collateral for the bond and the repayment obligation under the proposed guarantee. The Commissioner may decline to approve the application if the Commissioner determines that sufficient security is not provided. The Act and the CDBGP Rules previously required the Commissioner to make an investigation of the accreditation status and certain financial criteria for a charter district applying for a bond guarantee, which remain in place.

Since the initial authorization of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, the Act has established a bond guarantee reserve fund in the State treasury (the "Charter District Reserve Fund"). Formerly, the Act provided that each charter district that has a bond guaranteed must annually remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 10 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on its bonds due to the guarantee by the PSF. SB 1480 modified the Act insofar as it pertains to the Charter District Reserve Fund. Effective September 1, 2017, the Act provides that a charter district that has a bond guaranteed must remit to the Commissioner, for deposit in the Charter District Reserve Fund, an amount equal to 20 percent of the savings to the charter district that is a result of the lower interest rate on the bond due to the guarantee by the PSF. The amount due shall be paid on receipt by the charter district of the bond proceeds. However, the deposit requirement will not apply if the balance of the Charter District Reserve Fund is at least equal to three percent (3.00%) of the total amount of outstanding guaranteed bonds issued by charter districts. As of September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund represented approximately 0.50% of the guaranteed charter district bonds. SB 1480 also authorized the SBOE to manage the Charter District Reserve Fund in the same manner as it manages the PSF. Previously, the Charter District Reserve Fund was held by the Comptroller, but effective April 1 2018, the management of the Reserve Fund was transferred to the PSF division of TEA, where it will be held and invested as a non-commingled fund under the administration of the PSF staff.

### **Charter District Risk Factors**

Open-enrollment charter schools in the State may not charge tuition and, unlike school districts, charter districts have no taxing power. Funding for charter district operations is largely from amounts appropriated by the Legislature. The amount of such State payments a charter district receives is based on a variety of factors, including the enrollment at the schools operated by a charter district. The overall amount of education aid provided by the State for charter schools in any year is also subject to appropriation by the Legislature. The Legislature may base its decisions about appropriations for charter schools on many factors, including the State's economic performance. Further, because some public officials, their constituents, commentators and others have viewed charter schools as controversial, political factors may also come to bear on charter school funding, and such factors are subject to change.

Other than credit support for charter district bonds that is provided to qualifying charter districts by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, under current law, open-enrollment charter schools generally do not receive a dedicated funding allocation from the State to assist with the construction and acquisition of new facilities. However, during the 85th Regular Session of the Legislature in 2017, legislation was enacted that, for the first time, provided a limited appropriation in the amount of \$60 million for the 2018-2019 biennium for charter districts having an acceptable performance rating. A charter district that receives funding under this program may use the funds to lease or pay property taxes imposed on an instructional facility; to pay debt service on bonds that financed an instructional facility; or for any other purpose related to the purchase, lease, sale, acquisition, or maintenance of an instructional facility. Charter schools generally issue revenue bonds to fund facility construction and acquisition, or fund facilities from cash flows of the school. Some charter districts have issued non-guaranteed debt in addition to debt guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, and such non-guaranteed debt is likely to be secured by a deed of trust covering all or part of the charter district's facilities. In March 2017, the TEA began requiring charter districts to provide the TEA with a lien against charter district property as a condition to receiving a guarantee under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, charter district bonds issued and guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program prior to the implementation of the new requirement did not have the benefit of a security interest in real property, although other existing debts of such charter districts that are not guaranteed under the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program may be secured by real property that could be foreclosed on in the event of a bond default.

The maintenance of a State-granted charter is dependent upon on-going compliance with State law and TEA regulations, and TEA monitors compliance with applicable standards. TEA has a broad range of enforcement and remedial actions that it can take as corrective measures, and such actions may include the loss of the State charter, the appointment of a new board of directors to govern a charter district, the assignment of operations to another charter operator, or, as a last resort, the dissolution of an open-enrollment charter school.

As described above, the Act includes a funding "intercept" function that applies to both the School District Bond Guarantee Program and the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. However, school districts are viewed as the "educator of last resort" for students residing in the geographical territory of the district, which makes it unlikely that State funding for those school districts would be discontinued, although the TEA can require the dissolution and merger into another school district if necessary to ensure sound education and financial management of a school district. That is not the case with a charter district, however, and open-enrollment charter schools in the State have been dissolved by TEA from time to time. If a charter district that has bonds outstanding that are guaranteed by the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program should be dissolved, debt service on guaranteed bonds of the district would continue to be paid to bondholders in accordance with the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program, but there would be no funding available for reimbursement of the PSF by the Comptroller for such payments. As described under "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," the Act establishes a Charter District Reserve Fund, which could in the future be a significant reimbursement resource for the PSF. At September 30, 2018, the Charter District Reserve Fund contained \$7,164,188.



## Potential Impact of Hurricane Harvey on the PSF

Hurricane Harvey struck coastal Texas on August 26, 2017, resulting in historic levels of rainfall. The Governor designated the impacted area for disaster relief, and TEA believes that the storm impacted more than 1.3 million students enrolled in some 157 school districts, and approximately 58,000 students in 27 charter schools in the designated area. Many of the impacted school districts and two charter districts have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. It is possible that the affected districts will need to borrow to repair or replace damaged facilities, which could require increased bond issuance and applications to the TEA for PSF bond guarantees. In addition, the storm damage and any lingering economic damage in the area could adversely affect the tax base (for school districts) and credit quality of school districts and charter districts with bonds that are or will be guaranteed by the PSF.

The TEA, members of the Legislature and the Governor, among others, have stated that they are developing programs to provide financial assistance to affected school districts and charter districts, particularly with regard to funding assistance for facility repairs and construction and to offset tax base and/or revenue loss to affected districts. The composition of any final programs that may be implemented cannot be predicted, and are likely to be subject to future State legislative and administrative actions, available amounts of federal and private disaster relief for affected schools, and other factors. For fiscal year 2018, TEA initiated programs designed to hold school districts and charter districts harmless for the loss of State funding associated with declines in average daily attendance. In the past, storm damage has caused multiple year impacts to affected schools with respect to both attendance figures and tax base (for school districts). In June 2018 TEA received results of a survey of tax appraisal districts in the area affected by the hurricane with respect to the impact of the hurricane on the tax rolls of affected school districts. In aggregate, the tax rolls of affected districts appear to have increased slightly for fiscal 2018 over 2017, but the increases were at a lower rate than had been anticipated in the State's general appropriation act for the biennium. TEA notes that as of June 2018 the negative effect of the hurricane on the average daily attendance of districts in the affected area appears to have been less than TEA had initially anticipated.

Many of the school districts and two charter districts in the designated disaster area have bonds guaranteed by the PSF. TEA notes that no district has applied for financial exigency or failed to timely pay bond payments as a result of the hurricane or otherwise. The PSF is managed to maintain liquidity for any draws on the program. Moreover, as described under "The School District Bond Guarantee Program" and "The Charter District Bond Guarantee Program," both parts of the Bond Guarantee Program operate in accordance with the Act as "intercept" programs, providing liquidity for guaranteed bonds, and draws on the PSF are required to be restored from the first State money payable to a school district or a charter district that fails to make a guaranteed payment on its bonds.

### Ratings of Bonds Guaranteed Under the Guarantee Program

Moody's Investors Service, Inc., S&P Global Ratings and Fitch Ratings, Inc. rate bonds guaranteed by the PSF "Aaa," "AAA" and "AAA," respectively. Not all districts apply for multiple ratings on their bonds, however. See "RATING" herein.

### Valuation of the PSF and Guaranteed Bonds

#### Permanent School Fund Valuations

Fiscal Year Ended 8/31	Book Value <sup>(1)</sup>	Market Value <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$27,596,692,541	\$38,445,519,225
2015	29,081,052,900	36,196,265,273
2016	30,128,037,903	37,279,799,335
2017	31,870,581,428	41,438,672,573
2018 <sup>(2)</sup>	33,962,040,017	43,918,273,565

<sup>(1)</sup> SLB managed assets are included in the market value and book value of the Fund. In determining the market value of the PSF from time to time during a fiscal year, the TEA uses current, unaudited values for TEA managed investment portfolios and cash held by the SLB. With respect to SLB managed assets shown in the table above, market values of land and mineral interests, internally managed real estate, investments in externally managed real estate funds and cash are based upon information reported to the PSF by the SLB. The SLB reports that information to the PSF on a quarterly basis. The valuation of such assets at any point in time is dependent upon a variety of factors, including economic conditions in the State and nation in general, and the values of these assets, and, in particular, the valuation of mineral holdings administered by the SLB, can be volatile and subject to material changes from period to period.

<sup>(2)</sup> At August 31, 2018, mineral assets, sovereign and other lands and internally managed discretionary real estate, external discretionary real estate investments, domestic equities, and cash managed by the SLB had book values of approximately \$13.43 million, \$240.90 million, \$3,082.83 million, \$7.58 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively, and market values of approximately \$1,870.22 million, \$642.00 million, \$3,164.04 million, \$4.71 million, and \$4,247.36 million, respectively. At September 30, 2018, the PSF had a book value of \$33,937,270,391 and a market value of \$43,724,325,619. August 31, 2018 and September 30, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

#### Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds

At 8/31	Principal Amount <sup>(1)</sup>
2014	\$58,364,350,783
2015	63,955,449,047
2016	68,303,328,445
2017	74,266,090,023
2018	79,080,901,069 <sup>(2)</sup>

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program. The TEA does not maintain records of the accreted value of capital appreciation bonds that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> As of August 31, 2018 (the most recent date for which such data is available), the TEA expected that the principal and interest to be paid by school districts over the remaining life of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program was \$123,361,625,817, of which \$44,280,724,748 represents interest to be paid. As shown in the table above, at August 31, 2018, there were \$79,080,901,069 in

principal amount of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, and using the IRS Limit at that date of \$117,318,653,038 (the IRS Limit is currently the lower of the two federal and State capacity limits of Program capacity), 98.21% of Program capacity was available to the School District Bond Guarantee Program and 1.79% was available to the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program. August 31, 2018 values are based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment.

**Permanent School Fund Guaranteed Bonds by Category<sup>(1)</sup>**

Fiscal Year Ended	School District Bonds		Charter District Bonds		Totals	
	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount	No. of Issues	Principal Amount
8/31						
2014 <sup>(2)</sup>	2,869	\$58,061,805,783	10	\$302,545,000	2,879	\$58,364,350,783
2015	3,089	63,197,514,047	28	757,935,000	3,117	63,955,449,047
2016	3,244	67,342,303,445	35	961,025,000	3,279	68,303,328,445
2017	3,253	72,884,480,023	40	1,381,610,000	3,293	74,266,090,023
2018	3,249	77,647,966,069	44	1,432,935,000	3,293	79,080,901,069

<sup>(1)</sup> Represents original principal amount; does not reflect any subsequent accretions in value for compound interest bonds (zero coupon securities). The amount shown excludes bonds that have been refunded and released from the Guarantee Program.

<sup>(2)</sup> Fiscal 2014 was the first year of operation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program.

<sup>(3)</sup> At September 30, 2018 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment), there were \$79,828,771,069 of bonds guaranteed under the Guarantee Program, representing 3,265 school district issues, aggregating \$78,395,836,069 in principal amount and 45 charter district issues, aggregating \$1,432,935,000 in principal amount. At September 30, 2018, the capacity allocation of the Charter District Bond Guarantee Program was \$3,109,688,908 (based on unaudited data, which is subject to adjustment). 2018 data is unaudited, which is subject to adjustment.

**Discussion and Analysis Pertaining to Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017**

The following discussion is derived from the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2017, including the Message of the Executive Administrator of the Fund and the Management’s Discussion and Analysis contained therein, and will be updated upon the release of the Annual Report for the year ended August 31, 2018. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for the complete Message and MD&A. Investment assets managed by the fifteen member SBOE are referred to throughout this MD&A as the PSF(SBOE) assets. As of August 31, 2017, the Fund’s land, mineral rights and certain real assets are managed by the three-member SLB and these assets are referred to throughout as the PSF(SLB) assets. The current PSF asset allocation policy includes an allocation for real estate investments, and as such investments are made, and become a part of the PSF investment portfolio, those investments will be managed by the SBOE and not the SLB.

At the end of fiscal 2017, the Fund balance was \$41.4 billion, an increase of \$4.2 billion from the prior year. This increase is primarily due to overall increases in value of all asset classes in which the Fund has invested. During the year, the SBOE continued implementing the long term strategic asset allocation, diversifying the PSF(SBOE) to strengthen the Fund. The asset allocation is projected to increase returns over the long run while reducing risk and portfolio return volatility. The PSF(SBOE) annual rates of return for the one-year, five-year, and ten-year periods ending August 31, 2017, were 11.96%, 8.26% and 5.49%, respectively (total return takes into consideration the change in the market value of the Fund during the year as well as the interest and dividend income generated by the Fund’s investments). In addition, the SLB continued its shift into externally managed real asset investment funds, and the one-year, three-year, and five-year annualized total returns for the PSF(SLB) real assets, including cash, were 10.35%, 7.19%, and 7.77%, respectively.

The market value of the Fund’s assets is directly impacted by the performance of the various financial markets in which the assets are invested. The most important factors affecting investment performance are the asset allocation decisions made by the SBOE and SLB. The current SBOE long term asset allocation policy allows for diversification of the PSF(SBOE) portfolio into alternative asset classes whose returns are not as positively correlated as traditional asset classes. The implementation of the long term asset allocation will occur over several fiscal years and is expected to provide incremental total return at reduced risk. As of August 31, 2017, the PSF(SBOE) portion of the Fund had diversified into emerging market and large cap international equities, absolute return funds, real estate, private equity, risk parity, real return Treasury Inflation-Protected Securities, real return commodities, and emerging market debt.

As of August 31, 2017, the SBOE has approved and the Fund made capital commitments to externally managed real estate investment funds in a total amount of \$3.31 billion and capital commitments to private equity limited partnerships for a total of \$3.83 billion. Unfunded commitments at August 31, 2017, totaled \$1.35 billion in real estate investments and \$1.54 billion in private equity investments.

The PSF(SLB) portfolio is generally characterized by three broad categories: (1) discretionary real assets investments, (2) sovereign and other lands, and (3) mineral interests. Discretionary real assets investments consist of externally managed real estate, infrastructure, and energy/minerals investment funds; internally managed direct real estate investments, and cash. Sovereign and other lands consist primarily of the lands set aside to the PSF when it was created. Mineral interests consist of all of the minerals that are associated with PSF lands. The investment focus of PSF(SLB) discretionary real assets investments has shifted from internally managed direct real estate investments to externally managed real assets investment funds. The PSF(SLB) makes investments in certain limited partnerships that legally commit it to possible future capital contributions. At August 31, 2017, the remaining commitments totaled approximately \$2.042 billion.

The PSF(SBOE)’s investment in domestic large cap, domestic small/mid cap, international large cap, and emerging market equity securities experienced returns of 16.30%, 12.80%, 19.04%, and 26.28%, respectively, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. The PSF(SBOE)’s investment in domestic fixed income securities produced a return of 1.61% during the fiscal year and absolute return investments yielded a return of 7.32%. The PSF(SBOE) real estate and private equity investments returned 10.52% and 16.35%, respectively. Risk parity assets produced a return of 8.77%, while real return assets yielded 2.38%. Emerging market debt produced a return of 11.84%. Combined, all PSF(SBOE) asset classes produced an investment return of

11.96% for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, out-performing the benchmark index of 10.66% by approximately 130 basis points. All PSF(SLB) real assets (including cash) returned 10.35% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017.

For fiscal year 2017, total revenues, inclusive of unrealized gains and losses and net of security lending rebates and fees, totaled \$5.4 billion, an increase of \$2.7 billion from fiscal year 2016 earnings of \$2.7 billion. This increase reflects the performance of the securities markets in which the Fund was invested in fiscal year 2017. In fiscal year 2017, revenues earned by the Fund included lease payments, bonuses and royalty income received from oil, gas and mineral leases; lease payments from commercial real estate; surface lease and easement revenues; revenues from the resale of natural and liquid gas supplies; dividends, interest, and securities lending revenues; the net change in the fair value of the investment portfolio; and, other miscellaneous fees and income.

Expenditures are paid from the Fund before distributions are made under the total return formula. Such expenditures include the costs incurred by the SLB to manage the land endowment, as well as operational costs of the Fund, including external management fees paid from appropriated funds. Total operating expenditures, net of security lending rebates and fees, increased 30.6% for the fiscal year ending August 31, 2017. This increase is primarily attributable to an increase in PSF(SLB) operational costs and generally larger quantities of purchased gas for resale in the State Energy Management Program, which is administered by the SLB as part of the Fund.

The Fund supports the public school system in the State by distributing a predetermined percentage of its asset value to the ASF. For fiscal years 2016 and 2017, the distribution from the SBOE to the ASF totaled \$1.06 billion and \$1.06 billion, respectively. There was no contribution to the ASF by the SLB in fiscal year 2017.

At the end of the 2017 fiscal year, PSF assets guaranteed \$74.27 billion in bonds issued by 858 local school districts and charter districts, the latter of which entered into the Program during the 2014 fiscal year. Since its inception in 1983, the Fund has guaranteed 6,980 school district and charter district bond issues totaling \$166.3 billion in principal amount. During the 2017 fiscal year, the number of outstanding issues guaranteed under the Guarantee Program increased by 14, or 0.4%. The dollar amount of guaranteed school and charter bond issues outstanding increased by \$6.0 billion or 8.7%. The guarantee capacity of the Fund increased by \$13.9 billion, or 13.9%, during fiscal year 2017 due to continued growth in the cost basis of the Fund and the increase in the cost multiplier (from 3.25 to 3.50, as discussed above) used to calculate Program capacity.

### **2011 Constitutional Amendment**

On November 8, 2011, a referendum was held in the State as a result of legislation enacted that year that proposed amendments to various sections of the Texas Constitution pertaining to the PSF. At that referendum, voters of State approved non-substantive changes to the Texas Constitution to clarify references to the Fund, and, in addition, approved amendments that effected an increase to the base amount used in calculating the Distribution Rate from the Fund to the ASF, and authorized the SLB to make direct transfers to the ASF, as described below.

The amendments approved at the referendum included an increase to the base used to calculate the Distribution Rate by adding to the calculation base certain discretionary real assets and cash in the Fund that is managed by entities other than the SBOE (at present, by the SLB). The value of those assets were already included in the value of the Fund for purposes of the Guarantee Program, but prior to the amendment had not been included in the calculation base for purposes of making transfers from the Fund to the ASF. While the amendment provided for an increase in the base for the calculation of approximately \$2 billion, no new resources were provided for deposit to the Fund. As described under "The Total Return Constitutional Amendment" the SBOE is prevented from approving a Distribution Rate or making a pay out from the Fund if the amount distributed would exceed 6% of the average of the market value of the Fund, excluding real property in the Fund, but including discretionary real asset investments on the last day of each of the sixteen State fiscal quarters preceding the Regular Session of the Legislature that begins before that State fiscal biennium or if such pay out would exceed the Ten Year Total Return.

If there are no reductions in the percentage established biennially by the SBOE to be the Distribution Rate, the impact of the increase in the base against which the Distribution Rate is applied will be an increase in the distributions from the PSF to the ASF. As a result, going forward, it may be necessary for the SBOE to reduce the Distribution Rate in order to preserve the corpus of the Fund in accordance with its management objective of preserving intergenerational equity.

The Distribution Rates for the Fund were set at 3.5%, 2.5%, 4.2%, 3.3%, 3.5% and 3.7% for each of two year periods 2008-2009, 2010-2011, 2012-2013, 2014-2015, 2016-2017 and 2018-2019, respectively. In November 2018, the SBOE approved a \$2.2 billion distribution to the ASF for State fiscal biennium 2020-2021, to be made in equal monthly increments of \$92.2 million, which represents a 2.981% Distribution Rate for the biennium and a per student distribution of \$220.97, based on 2018 preliminary student average daily attendance of 5,004,998. In making the 2020-2021 biennium distribution decision, the SBOE took into account a commitment of the SLB transfer \$10 to the PSF in fiscal year 2020 and \$45 million in fiscal year 2021.

Changes in the Distribution Rate for each biennial period has been based on a number of financial and political reasons, as well as commitments made by the SLB in some years to transfer certain sums to the ASF. The new calculation base described above has been used to determine all payments to the ASF from the Fund beginning with the 2012-13 biennium. The broader base for the Distribution Rate calculation could increase transfers from the PSF to the ASF, although the effect of the broader calculation base has been somewhat offset since the 2014-2015 biennium by the establishment by the SBOE of somewhat lower Distribution Rates than for the 2012-2013 biennium. In addition, the changes made by the amendment that increased the calculation base that could affect the corpus of the Fund include the decisions that are made by the SLB or others that are, or may in the future be, authorized to make transfers of funds from the PSF to the ASF.

The constitutional amendments approved on November 8, 2011 also provide authority to the GLO or any other entity other than the SBOE that has responsibility for the management of land or other properties of the Fund to determine whether to transfer an amount each year from Fund assets to the ASF revenue derived from such land or properties, with the amount transferred limited to \$300 million. Any amount transferred to the ASF by an entity other than the SBOE is excluded from the 6% Distribution Rate limitation applicable to SBOE transfers.

### **Other Events and Disclosures**

The State Investment Ethics Code governs the ethics and disclosure requirements for financial advisors and other service providers who advise certain State governmental entities, including the PSF. In accordance with the provisions of the State Investment Ethics Code, the SBOE periodically modifies its code of ethics, which occurred most recently in April 2018. The SBOE code of ethics includes prohibitions on sharing confidential information, avoiding conflict of interests and requiring disclosure filings with respect to contributions made or received in connection with the operation or management of the Fund. The code of ethics applies to members of the SBOE as well as to persons who are responsible by contract or by virtue of being a TEA PSF staff member for managing, investing, executing brokerage transactions, providing consultant services, or acting as a custodian of the PSF, and persons who provide investment and management advice to a member of the SBOE, with or without

compensation under certain circumstances. The code of ethics is codified in the Texas Administrative Code at 19 TAC sections 33.5 et seq., and is available on the TEA web site at <http://ritter.tea.state.tx.us/rules/tac/chapter033/ch033a.html#33.5>.

In addition, the GLO has established processes and controls over its administration of real estate transactions and is subject to provisions of the Texas Natural Resources Code and its own internal procedures in administering real estate transactions for assets it manages for the Fund.

Since 2007, TEA has made supplemental appropriation requests to the Legislature for the purpose of funding the implementation of the 2008 Asset Allocation Policy, but those requests have been denied or partly funded. In the 2011 legislative session, the Legislature approved an increase of 31 positions in the full-time equivalent employees for the administration of the Fund, which was funded as part of an \$18 million appropriation for each year of the 2012-13 biennium, in addition to the operational appropriation of \$11 million for each year of the biennium. The TEA has begun increasing the PSF administrative staff in accordance with the 2011 legislative appropriation, and the TEA received an appropriation of \$30.2 million for the administration of the PSF for fiscal years 2016 and 2017, respectively, and \$30.4 million for each of the fiscal years 2018 and 2019.

As of August 31, 2017, certain lawsuits were pending against the State and/or the GLO, which challenge the Fund's title to certain real property and/or past or future mineral income from that property, and other litigation arising in the normal course of the investment activities of the PSF. Reference is made to the Annual Report, when filed, for a description of such lawsuits that are pending, which may represent contingent liabilities of the Fund.

### **PSF Continuing Disclosure Undertaking**

The SBOE has adopted an investment policy rule (the "TEA Rule") pertaining to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The TEA Rule is codified in Section I of the TEA Investment Procedure Manual, which relates to the Guarantee Program and is posted to the TEA web site at [http://tea.texas.gov/Finance\\_and\\_Grants/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund/Texas\\_Permanent\\_School\\_Fund\\_Disclosure\\_Statement\\_-\\_Bond\\_Guarantee\\_Program/](http://tea.texas.gov/Finance_and_Grants/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund/Texas_Permanent_School_Fund_Disclosure_Statement_-_Bond_Guarantee_Program/). The most recent amendment to the TEA Rule was adopted by the SBOE on November 16, 2018, and is summarized below. Through the adoption of the TEA Rule and its commitment to guarantee bonds, the SBOE has made the following agreement for the benefit of the issuers, holders and beneficial owners of guaranteed bonds. The TEA (or its successor with respect to the management of the Guarantee Program) is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains an "obligated person," within the meaning of Rule 15c2-12, with respect to guaranteed bonds. Nothing in the TEA Rule obligates the TEA to make any filings or disclosures with respect to guaranteed bonds, as the obligations of the TEA under the TEA Rule pertain solely to the Guarantee Program. The issuer or an "obligated person" of the guaranteed bonds has assumed the applicable obligation under Rule 15c-12 to make all disclosures and filings relating directly to guaranteed bonds, and the TEA takes no responsibility with respect to such undertakings. Under the TEA agreement, the TEA will be obligated to provide annually certain updated financial information and operating data, and timely notice of specified material events, to the MSRB.

The MSRB has established the Electronic Municipal Market Access ("EMMA") system, and the TEA is required to file its continuing disclosure information using the EMMA system. Investors may access continuing disclosure information filed with the MSRB at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org), and the continuing disclosure filings of the TEA with respect to the PSF can be found at <https://emma.msrb.org/IssueView/Details/ER355077> or by searching for "Texas Permanent School Fund Bond Guarantee Program" on EMMA.

### **Annual Reports**

The TEA will annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the Guarantee Program and the PSF of the general type included in this Official Statement under the heading "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM." The information also includes the Annual Report. The TEA will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year.

The TEA may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly-available documents, as permitted by Rule 15c2-12. The updated information includes audited financial statements of, or relating to, the State or the PSF, when and if such audits are commissioned and available. Financial statements of the State will be prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles as applied to state governments, as such principles may be changed from time to time, or such other accounting principles as the State Auditor is required to employ from time to time pursuant to State law or regulation. The financial statements of the Fund were prepared to conform to U.S. Generally Accepted Accounting Principles as established by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board.

The Fund is reported by the State of Texas as a permanent fund and accounted for on a current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. Measurement focus refers to the definition of the resource flows measured. Under the modified accrual basis of accounting, all revenues reported are recognized based on the criteria of availability and measurability. Assets are defined as available if they are in the form of cash or can be converted into cash within 60 days to be usable for payment of current liabilities. Amounts are defined as measurable if they can be estimated or otherwise determined. Expenditures are recognized when the related fund liability is incurred.

The State's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, the TEA must provide updated information by the last day of February in each year, unless the State changes its fiscal year. If the State changes its fiscal year, the TEA will notify the MSRB of the change.

### **Event Notices**

The TEA will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. Such notices will be provided not more than ten business days after the occurrence of the event. The TEA will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Guarantee Program: (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the IRS of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax-exempt status of the Guarantee Program, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Guarantee Program; (7) modifications to rights of holders of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (8) bond calls, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the Guarantee Program (which is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the Guarantee Program in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in

any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the Guarantee Program); (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the Guarantee Program or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; (14) the appointment of a successor or additional trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program or the change of name of a trustee, if such event is material within the meaning of the federal securities laws; (15) the incurrence of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, if material, or agreement to covenants, events of default, remedies, priority rights, or other similar terms of a financial obligation of the Program, any of which affect security holders, if material; and (16) default, event of acceleration, termination event, modification of terms, or other similar events under the terms of a financial obligation of the Guarantee Program, any of which reflect financial difficulties. (Neither the Act nor any other law, regulation or instrument pertaining to the Guarantee Program make any provision with respect to the Guarantee Program for bond calls, debt service reserves, credit enhancement, liquidity enhancement, early redemption or the appointment of a trustee with respect to the Guarantee Program.) In addition, the TEA will provide timely notice of any failure by the TEA to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports."

### **Availability of Information**

The TEA has agreed to provide the foregoing information only to the MSRB and to transmit such information electronically to the MSRB in such format and accompanied by such identifying information as prescribed by the MSRB. The information is available from the MSRB to the public without charge at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

### **Limitations and Amendments**

The TEA has agreed to update information and to provide notices of material events only as described above. The TEA has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that is provided, except as described above. The TEA makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The TEA disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the TEA to comply with its agreement.

The continuing disclosure agreement of the TEA is made only with respect to the PSF and the Guarantee Program. The issuer of guaranteed bonds or an obligated person with respect to guaranteed bonds may make a continuing disclosure undertaking in accordance with Rule 15c2-12 with respect to its obligations arising under Rule 15c2-12 pertaining to financial and operating data concerning such entity and notices of material events relating to such guaranteed bonds. A description of such undertaking, if any, is included elsewhere in the Official Statement.

This continuing disclosure agreement may be amended by the TEA from time to time to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the TEA, but only if (1) the provisions, as so amended, would have permitted an underwriter to purchase or sell guaranteed bonds in the primary offering of such bonds in compliance with Rule 15c2-12, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of Rule 15c2-12 since such offering as well as such changed circumstances and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program consent to such amendment or (b) a person that is unaffiliated with the TEA (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that such amendment will not materially impair the interest of the holders and beneficial owners of the bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program. The TEA may also amend or repeal the provisions of its continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of Rule 15c2-12 or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling bonds guaranteed by the Guarantee Program in the primary offering of such bonds.

### **Compliance with Prior Undertakings**

During the last five years, the TEA has not failed to substantially comply with its previous continuing disclosure agreements in accordance with Rule 15c2-12.

### **SEC Exemptive Relief**

On February 9, 1996, the TEA received a letter from the Chief Counsel of the SEC that pertains to the availability of the "small issuer exemption" set forth in paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12. The letter provides that Texas school districts which offer municipal securities that are guaranteed under the Guarantee Program may undertake to comply with the provisions of paragraph (d)(2) of Rule 15c2-12 if their offerings otherwise qualify for such exemption, notwithstanding the guarantee of the school district securities under the Guarantee Program. Among other requirements established by Rule 15c2-12, a school district offering may qualify for the small issuer exemption if, upon issuance of the proposed series of securities, the school district will have no more than \$10 million of outstanding municipal securities.

### **TAX RATE LIMITATIONS**

A school district is authorized to levy maintenance and operation ("M&O") taxes subject to approval of a proposition submitted to district voters under Section 45.003(d) of the Texas Education Code, as amended. The maximum M&O tax rate that may be levied by a district cannot exceed the voted maximum rate or the maximum rate described in the next succeeding paragraph. The maximum voted M&O tax rate for the District is \$1.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation as approved by the voters at an election held on November 14, 1992 under Chapter 20, Texas Education Code (now codified as Section 45.003, Texas Education Code).

The maximum tax rate per \$100 of assessed valuation that may be adopted by the District may not exceed the lesser of (A) \$1.50 and (B) the sum of (1) the rate of \$0.17, and (2) the product of the "State Compression Percentage" multiplied by \$1.50. The State Compression Percentage has been set, and will remain, at 66.67% for the 2018-19 State fiscal biennium. The State Compression Percentage is set by legislative appropriation for each State fiscal biennium or, in the absence of legislative appropriation, by the Commissioner. For a more detailed description of the State Compression Percentage, see "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM – Local Funding for School Districts". Furthermore, a school district cannot annually increase its tax rate in excess of the district's "rollback tax rate" without submitting such tax rate to a referendum election and a majority of the voters voting at such election approving the adopted rate. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – Public Hearing and Rollback Tax Rate".

A school district is also authorized to issue bonds and levy taxes for payment of bonds subject to voter approval of one or more propositions submitted to the voters under Section 45.003(b)(1), Texas Education Code, as amended, which provides a tax unlimited as to rate or amount for the support of school district bonded indebtedness (see "THE BONDS – Security").

Section 45.0031, Texas Education Code, as amended ("Section 45.0031"), requires a district to demonstrate to the Texas Attorney General that it has the prospective ability to pay its maximum annual debt service on a proposed issue of bonds and all previously issued bonds, other than bonds approved by district voters at an election held on or before April 1, 1991 and issued before September 1, 1992 (or debt issued to refund such bonds, collectively, "exempt bonds"), from a tax levied at a rate of \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation before bonds may be issued. In demonstrating the ability to pay debt service at a rate of \$0.50, a district may take into account EDA and IFA allotments to the district, which effectively reduces the district's local share of debt service, and may also take into account Tier One funds allotted to the district. The District is required to deposit any State allotments provided solely for payment of debt service into the District's interest and sinking fund upon receipt of such amounts. In addition, the District must, prior to levying an interest and sinking fund tax rate that exceeds \$0.50 per \$100 of assessed valuation, credit to the interest and sinking fund other State assistance, including Tier One funds that may be used for either operating purposes or for payment of debt service, in an amount equal to the amount needed to demonstrate compliance with the threshold tax rate test and which is received or to be received in that year. Once the prospective ability to pay such tax has been shown and the bonds are issued, a district may levy an unlimited tax to pay debt service. Taxes levied to pay refunding bonds issued pursuant to Chapter 1207, Texas Government Code, are not subject to the \$0.50 tax rate test; however, taxes levied to pay debt service on such bonds (other than bonds issued to refund exempt bonds) are included in maximum annual debt service for calculation of the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test when applied to subsequent bond issues that are subject to the tax rate test. The Bonds are issued as "new money" bonds are subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. Under current law, a district may demonstrate its ability to comply with the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test by applying the \$0.50 tax rate to an amount equal to 90% of projected future taxable value of property in the district, as certified by a registered professional appraiser, anticipated for the earlier of the tax year five years after the current tax year or the tax year in which the final payment for the bonds is due. However, if a district uses projected future taxable values to meet the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test and subsequently imposes a tax at a rate greater than \$0.50 per \$100 of valuation to pay for bonds subject to the test, then for subsequent bond issues, the Texas Attorney General must find that the district has the projected ability to pay principal and interest on the proposed bonds and all previously issued bonds subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test from a tax rate of \$0.45 per \$100 of valuation. The District has not used projected property values to satisfy this threshold test.

### **DEBT LIMITATIONS**

Under State law, there is no explicit bonded indebtedness limitation, although the tax rate limits described above under "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" effectively impose a limit on the incurrence of debt. Such tax rate limits require school districts to demonstrate the ability to pay new debt secured by the district's debt service tax from a tax rate of \$0.50, and to pay all debt and operating expenses which must be paid from receipts of the district's maintenance tax from a tax not to exceed the maintenance tax limit described under the caption "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS." In demonstrating compliance with the requirement, a district may take into account State equalization payments, and, effective September 1, 1997, if compliance with such requirement is contingent on receiving State assistance, a district may not adopt a tax rate for a year for purposes of paying the principal of and interest on the bonds unless the district credits to the interest and sinking fund of the bond the amount of State assistance received or to be received in that year. The Texas Attorney General reviews a district's calculations showing the compliance with such test as a condition to the legal approval of the debt. The Bonds are "new debt" and are therefore subject to the \$0.50 threshold tax rate test. See also "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS".

### **EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS AND OTHER POST-EMPLOYMENT BENEFITS**

The District's employees participate in a retirement plan (the "Plan") with the State of Texas. The Plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas ("TRS"). State contributions are made to cover costs of the TRS retirement plan up to certain statutory limits. The District is obligated for a portion of TRS costs relating to employee salaries that exceed the statutory limit. Aside from the District's contribution to TRS, the District has no pension fund expenditures or liabilities. For fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, the District made a contribution to TRS on a portion of their employee's salaries that exceeded the statutory minimum. The District generally does not offer any post-employment retirement benefits and has no liabilities for "Other Post Employment Retirement Benefits" as defined in GASB Statement No. 45. For a discussion of the TRS retirement plan, see "Note I. Defined Benefit Pension Plan" to the audited financial statements of the District that are attached hereto as Appendix D (the "Financial Statements").

As a result of its participation in the Plan and the TRS-Care Retired Plan and having no other post-retirement benefit plans, the District has no obligations for other post-employment benefits within the meaning of Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") Statement 45.

During the year ended August 31, 2017, employees of the District were covered by a fully-insured health insurance plan (the "Health Care Plan"). The District contributed \$225 per month per employee to the Health Care Plan. Employees, at their option, authorize payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. See "Note J. Active Employee Health Care Coverage" of the Financial Statements.

Formal collective bargaining agreements relating directly to wages and other conditions of employment are prohibited by State law, as are strikes by teachers. There are various local, state and national organized employee groups who engage in efforts to better terms and conditions of employment of school employees. Some districts have adopted a policy to consult with employer groups with respect to certain terms and conditions of employment. Some examples of these groups are the Texas State Teachers Association, the Texas Classroom Teachers Association, the Association of Texas Professional Educators and the National Education Association.

### **RATING**

The Bonds are rated "AAA" by S&P Global Ratings ("S&P") based upon the guaranteed repayment thereof under the Permanent School Fund Guarantee Program of the Texas Education Agency (see "THE PERMANENT SCHOOL FUND GUARANTEE PROGRAM" herein). The District's unenhanced, underlying rating, including the Bonds, is "A" by S&P.

An explanation of the significance of such rating may be obtained from S&P. The rating of the Bonds by S&P reflects only the view of said company at the time the rating is given, and the District makes no representations as to the appropriateness of the rating. There is no assurance that the rating will continue for any given period of time, or that the rating will not be revised downward or withdrawn entirely by S&P, if, in the judgment of S&P, circumstances so warrant. Any such downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

The above rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold the Bonds, and such rating may be subject to revision or withdrawal at any time by S&P. Any downward revision or withdrawal of the rating may have an adverse effect on the market price of the Bonds.

## LEGAL MATTERS

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the approval of the Attorney General of Texas to the effect that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the District payable from the proceeds of an annual ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the District, and the approving legal opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, Bond Counsel to the District ("Bond Counsel"), to like effect and to the effect that the interest on the Bonds will be excludable from gross income for federal income tax purposes under section 103(a) of the Internal Revenue Code, subject to the matters described under "TAX MATTERS" herein, including the alternative minimum tax on corporations. The form of Bond Counsel's opinion is attached hereto as Appendix C. The legal fee to be paid to Bond Counsel for services rendered in connection with the issuance of the Bonds is contingent upon the sale and delivery of the Bonds.

Though it represents the Financial Advisor from time to time in matters unrelated to the issuance of the Bonds, Bond Counsel has been engaged by and only represents the District in connection with the issuance of the Bonds. Except as noted below, Bond Counsel was not requested to participate, and did not take part in the preparation of this Official Statement, and such firm has not assumed any responsibility with respect thereto or undertaken independently to verify any of the information contained herein except that in its capacity as Bond Counsel, such firm has reviewed the information appearing under the captions or subcaptions "THE BONDS" (except for the information included in the second paragraph under the subcaption "Notice of Redemption and DTC Notices" and under the subcaptions "Permanent School Fund Guarantee" and "Payment Record," as to which no opinion is expressed), and "CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION" (except for the information under the sub-caption "Compliance With Prior Undertakings," as to which no opinion is expressed), and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein fairly and accurately reflect the provisions of the Order; further, Bond Counsel has reviewed the statements and information contained in this Official Statement under the captions and sub-captions "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS," "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM," "TAX RATE LIMITATIONS" (first paragraph only), "LEGAL MATTERS," "TAX MATTERS," "LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS," and "REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE," and Bond Counsel is of the opinion that the statements and information contained therein are correct as to matters of law.

The various legal opinions to be delivered concurrently with the delivery of the Bonds express the professional judgment of the attorneys rendering the opinions as to the legal issues explicitly addressed therein. In rendering a legal opinion, the attorney does not become an insurer or guarantor of the expression of professional judgment, of the transaction opined upon, or of the future performance of the parties to the transaction. Nor does the rendering of an opinion guarantee the outcome of any legal dispute that may arise out of the transaction.

## TAX MATTERS

### Tax Exemption

The delivery of the Bonds is subject to the opinion of Bond Counsel to the effect that interest on the Bonds for federal income tax purposes (1) is excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the "Code"), of the owners thereof pursuant to section 103 of the Code and existing regulations, published rulings, and court decisions, and (2) will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof. The statutes, regulations, rulings, and court decisions on which such opinion is based are subject to change. A form of Bond Counsel's legal opinion appears in Appendix C hereto.

In rendering the foregoing opinions, Bond Counsel will rely upon representations and certifications of the District made in certificates pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds and will assume continuing compliance by the District with the provisions of the Order subsequent to the issuance of the Bonds. The Order contains covenants by the District with respect to, among other matters, the use of the proceeds of the Bonds and the facilities financed therewith by persons other than state or local governmental units, the manner in which the proceeds of the Bonds are to be invested, the periodic calculation and payment to the United States Treasury of arbitrage "profits" from the investment of the proceeds, and the reporting of certain information to the United States Treasury. Failure to comply with any of these covenants may cause interest on the Bonds to be includable in the gross income of the owners thereof from the date of the issuance of the Bonds.

Except as described above, Bond Counsel will express no other opinion with respect to any other federal, state or local tax consequences under present law, or proposed legislation, resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Bond Counsel's opinion is not a guarantee of a result, but represents its legal judgment based upon its review of existing statutes, regulations, published rulings and court decisions and the representations and covenants of the District described above. No ruling has been sought from the Internal Revenue Service (the "IRS") with respect to the matters addressed in the opinion of Bond Counsel, and Bond Counsel's opinion is not binding on the IRS. The IRS has an ongoing program of auditing the tax-exempt status of the interest on municipal obligations. If an audit of the Bonds is commenced, under current procedures the IRS is likely to treat the District as the "taxpayer," and the owners of the Bonds would have no right to participate in the audit process. In responding to or defending an audit of the tax-exempt status of the interest on the Bonds, the District may have different or conflicting interests from the owners of the Bonds. Public awareness of any audit of the Bonds could adversely affect the value and liquidity of the Bonds during the pendency of the audit, regardless of its ultimate outcome.

### Tax Changes

Existing law may change to reduce or eliminate the benefit to bondholders of the exclusion of interest on the Bonds from gross income for federal income tax purposes. Any proposed legislation or administrative action, whether or not taken, could also affect the value and marketability of the Bonds. It is uncertain whether this legislation will be enacted and, if so, whether it will be enacted in its current form. Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to any proposed or future changes in tax law.

### Ancillary Tax Consequences

Prospective purchasers of the Bonds should be aware that the ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions (see "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" herein), property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust (FASIT), individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals

otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations. Prospective purchasers should consult their own tax advisors as to the applicability of these consequences to their particular circumstances.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Discount Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be less than the amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Discount Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Discount Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Discount Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and the amount payable at maturity constitutes original issue discount to the initial purchaser of such Discount Bonds. A portion of such original issue discount, allocable to the holding period of a Discount Bond by the initial purchaser, will be treated as interest for federal income tax purposes, excludable from gross income on the same terms and conditions as those for other interest on the Bonds. Such interest is considered to be accrued actuarially in accordance with the constant interest method over the life of a Discount Bond, taking into account the semiannual compounding of accrued interest, at the yield to maturity on such Discount Bond and generally will be allocated to an initial purchaser in a different amount from the amount of the payment denominated as interest actually received by the initial purchaser during his taxable year.

However, such accrued interest may be required to be taken into account in determining the amount of the branch profits tax applicable to certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment. In addition, the accrual of such interest may result in certain other collateral federal income tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions (see "TAX MATTERS – Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations" herein), property and casualty insurance companies, life insurance companies, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a FASIT, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income tax credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

In the event of the redemption, sale or other taxable disposition of a Discount Bond prior to maturity, the amount realized by such owner in excess of the basis of such Discount Bond in the hands of such owner (adjusted upward by the portion of the original issue discount allocable to the period for which such Discount Bond was held) is includable in gross income.

Owners of Discount Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination for federal income tax purposes of accrued interest upon disposition of Discount Bonds and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Discount Bonds. It is possible that, under applicable provisions governing determination of state and local income taxes, accrued interest on the Discount Bonds may be deemed to be received in the year of accrual even though there will not be a corresponding cash payment.

### **Tax Accounting Treatment of Premium Bonds**

The initial public offering price to be paid for certain Bonds may be greater than the stated redemption price amount payable on such Bonds at maturity (the "Premium Bonds"). An amount equal to the difference between the initial public offering price of a Premium Bond (assuming that a substantial amount of the Premium Bonds of that maturity are sold to the public at such price) and its stated redemption price at maturity constitutes premium to the initial purchaser of such Premium Bonds. The basis for federal income tax purposes of a Premium Bond in the hands of such initial purchaser must be reduced each year by the amortizable bond premium, although no federal income tax deduction is allowed as a result of such reduction in basis for amortizable bond premium with respect to the Premium Bonds. Such reduction in basis will increase the amount of any gain (or decrease the amount of any loss) to be recognized for federal income tax purposes upon a sale or other taxable disposition of a Premium Bond. The amount of premium which is amortizable each year by an initial purchaser is determined by using such purchaser's yield to maturity.

Purchasers of the Premium Bonds should consult with their own tax advisors with respect to the determination of amortizable bond premium on Premium Bonds for federal income tax purposes and with respect to the state and local tax consequences of owning and disposing of Premium Bonds.

### **Qualified Tax-Exempt Obligations**

Section 265 of the Code provides, in general, that interest expense to acquire or carry tax-exempt obligations is not deductible from the gross income of the owner of such obligations. In addition, section 265 of the Code generally disallows 100% of any deduction for interest expense which is incurred by "financial institutions" described in such section and is allocable, as computed in such section, to tax-exempt interest on obligations acquired after August 7, 1986. Section 265(b) of the Code provides an exemption to this interest disallowance rule for financial institutions stating that such disallowance does not apply to interest expense allocable to certain tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501 (c)(3) bonds) which are properly designated by an issuer as "qualified tax-exempt obligations." An issuer may designate obligations as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" only if the amount of the issue of which they are a part, when added to the amount of certain other tax-exempt obligations (other than private activity bonds that are not qualified 501 (c)(3) obligations other than certain current refunding bonds) issued or reasonably anticipated to be issued by the issuer and certain related entities during the same calendar year, does not exceed \$10,000,000.

The District will designate the Bonds as "qualified tax-exempt obligations" and will certify its expectation that the above described \$10,000,000 ceiling will not be exceeded. Accordingly, it is anticipated that financial institutions which purchase the Bonds will not be subject to the 100% disallowance of interest expense allocable to interest on the Bonds under section 265(b) of the Code. However, the deduction for interest expense incurred by a financial institution which is allocable to the interest on the Bonds will be reduced by 20% pursuant to section 291 of the Code.

## **INVESTMENT POLICIES**

### **Investments**

The District invests its funds in investments authorized by Texas law in accordance with investment policies approved by the Board of the District. Both State law and the District's investment policies are subject to change.



## Legal Investments

Under State law, the District is authorized to invest in (1) obligations, including letters of credit, of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities, (2) direct obligations of the State or its agencies and instrumentalities, (3) collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States, (4) other obligations, the principal of and interest on which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of the State or the United States or their respective agencies and instrumentalities, (5) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent, (6) certificates of deposit and share certificates (i) that are issued by or through an institution that has its main office or a branch office in Texas and are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund, or are secured as to principal by obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clause (14) or in any other manner and amount provided by law for District deposits; or (ii) where: (a) the funds are invested by the District through a depository institution that has a main office or branch office in the State and that is selected by the District; (b) the depository institution selected by the District arranges for the deposit of funds in one or more federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, for the account of the District; (c) the full amount of the principal and accrued interest of each of the certificates of deposit is insured by the United States or an instrumentality of the United States; (d) the depository institution acts as a custodian for the District with respect to the certificates of deposit; and (e) at the same time that the certificates of deposit are issued, the depository institution selected by the District receives deposits from customers of other federally insured depository institutions, wherever located, that is equal to or greater than the funds invested by the District through the depository institution selected under clause (ii)(a) above (7) fully collateralized repurchase agreements that have a defined termination date, are fully secured by obligations described in clause (1) and require the security being purchased by the District to be pledged to the District, held in the District's name and deposited at the time the investment is made with the District or with a third party selected and approved by the District, and are placed through a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State, (8) bankers' acceptances with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance, if the short-term obligations of the accepting bank or its parent are rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least one nationally recognized credit rating agency, (9) commercial paper with the remaining term of 270 days or less from the date of issuance that is rated at least A-1 or P-1 or the equivalent by at least (a) two nationally recognized credit rating agencies or (b) one nationally recognized credit rating agency if the paper is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a U.S. or state bank, (10) no-load money market mutual funds registered with and regulated by the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that comply with Federal Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 2a-7, (11) no-load mutual funds registered with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission that have an average weighted maturity of less than two years and have a duration of one year or more and are invested exclusively in obligations described in this paragraph or have a duration of less than one year and the investment portfolio is limited to investment grade securities, excluding asset-backed securities, (13) interest-bearing banking deposits that are guaranteed or insured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or its successor or the National Credit Union Share Insurance Fund or its successors, and (14) obligations issued, assumed or guaranteed by the State of Israel. Texas law also permits the District to invest bond proceeds in a guaranteed investment contract subject to the limitations set forth in Chapter 2256, as amended, Texas Government Code.

Entities such as the District may enter into securities lending programs if (i) the securities loaned under the program are 100% collateralized including accrued income, a loan made under the program allows for termination at any time and a loan made under the program is either secured by (a) obligations that are described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, (b) pledged irrevocable letters of credit issued by a state or national bank that is continuously rated by a nationally recognized investment rating firm at not less than A or its equivalent or (c) cash invested in obligations described in clauses (1) through (5) and clauses (13) and (14) above, clause (9) above and clauses (10) and (11) above, or an authorized investment pool; (ii) securities held as collateral under a loan are pledged to such investing entity or a third party designated by such investing entity; (iii) a loan made under the program is placed through either a primary government securities dealer or a financial institution doing business in the State; and (iv) the agreement to lend securities has a term of one year or less.

The District is specifically prohibited from investing in: (1) obligations whose payment represents the coupon payments on the outstanding principal balance of the underlying mortgage-backed security collateral and pays no principal; (2) obligations whose payment represents the principal stream of cash flow from the underlying mortgage-backed security and bears no interest; (3) collateralized mortgage obligations that have a stated final maturity of greater than 10 years; and (4) collateralized mortgage obligations the interest rate of which is determined by an index that adjusts opposite to the changes in a market index.

Under State law, the District may contract with an investment management firm registered under the Investment Advisers Act of 1940 (15 U.S.C. Section 80b-1 et seq.) or with the State Securities Board to provide for the investment and management of its public funds or other funds under its control for a term of up to two years, but the District retains ultimate responsibility as fiduciary of its assets. In order to renew or extend such a contract, the District must do so by order, ordinance or resolution. The District has not contracted with, and has no present intention of contracting with, any such investment management firm or the State Securities Board to provide such services.

## Investment Policies

Under State law, the District is required to invest its funds under written investment policies that primarily emphasize safety of principal and liquidity; that address investment diversification, yield, maturity, and the quality and capability of investment management; and that includes a list of authorized investments for District funds, maximum allowable stated maturity of any individual investment owned by the District and the maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed for pooled fund groups, methods to monitor the market price of investments acquired with public funds, a requirement for settlement of all transactions, except investment pool funds and mutual funds, on a delivery versus payment basis, and procedures to monitor rating changes in investments acquired with public funds and the liquidation of such investments consistent with the Texas Public Funds Investment Act. All District funds must be invested consistent with a formally adopted "Investment Strategy Statement" that specifically addresses each fund's investment. Each Investment Strategy Statement will describe its objectives concerning: (1) suitability of investment type, (2) preservation and safety of principal, (3) liquidity, (4) marketability of each investment, (5) diversification of the portfolio, and (6) yield.

State law also requires that District investments must be made "with judgment and care, under prevailing circumstances, that a person of prudence, discretion, and intelligence would exercise in the management of the person's own affairs, not for speculation, but for investment, considering the probable safety of capital and the probable income to be derived". At least quarterly the investment officers of the District shall submit an investment report detailing: (1) the investment position of the District, (2) that all investment officers jointly prepared and signed the report, (3) the beginning market value, any additions and

changes to market value and the ending value of each pooled fund group, (4) the book value and market value of each separately listed asset at the beginning and end of the reporting period, (5) the maturity date of each separately invested asset, (6) the account or fund or pooled fund group for which each individual investment was acquired, and (7) the compliance of the investment portfolio as it relates to: (a) adopted investment strategy statements and (b) State law. No person may invest District funds without express written authority from the Board.

### **Additional Provisions**

Under State law, the District is additionally required to: (1) annually review its adopted policies and strategies, (2) adopt a rule, order, ordinance or resolution stating that it has reviewed its investment policy and investment strategies and records any changes made to either its investment policy or investment strategy in the respective rule, order, ordinance or resolution, (3) require any investment officers with personal business relationships or relatives with firms seeking to sell securities to the entity to disclose the relationship and file a statement with the Texas Ethics Commission and the Board; (4) require the qualified representative of firms offering to engage in an investment transaction with the District to: (a) receive and review the District's investment policy, (b) acknowledge that reasonable controls and procedures have been implemented to preclude investment transactions conducted between the District and the business organization that are not authorized by the District's investment policy (except to the extent that this authorization is dependent on an analysis of the makeup of the District's entire portfolio or requires an interpretation of subjective investment standards), and (c) deliver a written statement in a form acceptable to the District and the business organization attesting to these requirements; (5) perform an annual audit of the management controls on investments and adherence to the District's investment policy; (6) provide specific investment training for the Treasurer, Chief Financial Officer and investment officers; (7) restrict reverse repurchase agreements to not more than 90 days and restrict the investment of reverse repurchase agreement funds to no greater than the term of the reverse purchase agreement; (8) restrict the investment in no-load mutual funds in the aggregate to no more than 15% of the District's monthly average fund balance, excluding bond proceeds and reserves and other funds held for debt service; (9) require local government investment pools to conform to the new disclosure, rating, net asset value, yield calculation, and advisory board requirements, and (10) at least annually review, revise, and adopt a list of qualified brokers that are authorized to engage in investment transactions with the District.

### **Current Investments**

As of November 6, 2018, the District had approximately \$2,026,247 (unaudited) invested at a local bank. The market value of such investments (as determined by the District by reference to published quotations, dealer bids, and comparable information) is approximately 100% of the book value. No funds of the District are invested in derivative securities, i.e., securities whose rate of return is determined by reference to some other instrument, index, or commodity.

### **REGISTRATION AND QUALIFICATION OF BONDS FOR SALE**

No registration statement relating to the Bonds has been filed with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC") under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended, in reliance upon the exemption provided thereunder by Section 3(a)(2). The Bonds have not been approved or disapproved by the SEC, nor has the SEC passed upon the accuracy or adequacy of the Official Statement. The Bonds have not been registered or qualified under the Securities Act of Texas in reliance upon various exemptions contained therein; nor have the Bonds been registered or qualified under the securities acts of any other jurisdiction. The District assumes no responsibility for registration or qualification of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction in which the Bonds may be sold, assigned, pledged, hypothecated or otherwise transferred. This disclaimer of responsibility for registration or qualification for sale or other disposition of the Bonds shall not be construed as an interpretation of any kind with regard to the availability of any exemption from securities registration or qualification provisions.

It is the obligation of the Purchaser to register or qualify the sale of the Bonds under the securities laws of any jurisdiction which so requires. The District agrees to cooperate, at the Purchaser's written request and sole expense, in registering or qualifying the Bonds or in obtaining an exemption from registration or qualification in any state where such action is necessary; provided, however, that the District shall not be required to qualify as a foreign corporation or to execute a general or special consent to service of process in any jurisdiction.

### **FINANCIAL ADVISOR**

SAMCO Capital Markets, Inc. is employed as Financial Advisor to the District to assist in the issuance of the Bonds. In this capacity, the Financial Advisor has compiled certain data relating to the Bonds that is contained in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has not independently verified any of the data contained herein or conducted a detailed investigation of the affairs of the District to determine the accuracy or completeness of this Official Statement. Because of its limited participation, the Financial Advisor assumes no responsibility for the accuracy or completeness of any of the information contained herein. The fee of the Financial Advisor for services with respect to the Bonds is contingent upon the issuance and sale of the Bonds. In the normal course of business, the Financial Advisor may from time to time sell investment securities to the District for the investment of bond proceeds or other funds of the District upon the request of the District.

The Financial Advisor has provided the following sentence for inclusion in this Official Statement. The Financial Advisor has reviewed the information in this Official Statement in accordance with, and as part of, its responsibilities to the District and, as applicable, to investors under the federal securities laws as applied to the facts and circumstances of this transaction, but the Financial Advisor does not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information.

### **LEGAL INVESTMENTS AND ELIGIBILITY TO SECURE PUBLIC FUNDS IN TEXAS**

Section 1201.041 of the Public Securities Procedures Act (Chapter 1201, Texas Government Code) provides that the Bonds are negotiable instruments governed by Chapter 8, Texas Business and Commerce Code, and are legal and authorized investments for insurance companies, fiduciaries, and trustees, and for the sinking funds of municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State. With respect to investment in the Bonds by municipalities or other political subdivisions or public agencies of the State, the Public Funds Investment Act, Chapter 2256, Texas Government Code, requires that the Bonds be assigned a rating of not less than "A" or its equivalent as to investment quality by a national rating agency. See "RATING" herein. In addition, various provisions of the Texas Finance Code provide that, subject to a prudent investor standard, the Bonds are legal investments for state banks, savings banks, trust companies with at least \$1 million of capital, and savings and loan associations. The Bonds are eligible to secure deposits of any public funds of the State, its agencies, and its political subdivisions, and are legal security for those deposits to the extent of their market value.

The District has made no investigation of other laws, rules, regulations or investment criteria which might apply to such institutions or entities or which might limit the suitability of the Bonds for any of the foregoing purposes or limit the authority of such institutions or

entities to purchase or invest in the Bonds for such purposes. The District has made no review of laws in other states to determine whether the Bonds are legal investments for various institutions in those states.

### **CONTINUING DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION**

The District is exempt from certain of the continuing disclosure obligations set forth in the United States Securities and Exchange Commission Rule 15c2-12, as amended (the "Rule"), pursuant to the exemption under subsection (d)(2), which applies to certain small issuers such as the District who are not an "obligated person" (as defined in the Rule) responsible for the repayment of municipal securities outstanding (including the Bonds) in an aggregate principal amount exceeding \$10,000,000. This exception allows the District to not file annual updates to all financial and operating data that is included in this Official Statement.

In the Order, the District has made the following agreement for the benefit of the holders and Beneficial Owners of the Bonds. The District is required to observe the agreement for so long as it remains obligated to advance funds to pay the Bonds. Under the agreement, the District will be obligated to annually provide certain updated financial information and operating data that is included in this Official Statement, that is customarily prepared by the District and that is publicly available, as well as timely notice of specified events to the Municipal Securities Rulemaking Board (the "MSRB"). The information provided to the MSRB will be available to the public free of charge via the Electronic Municipal Markets Access system ("EMMA") through an internet website accessible at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org). Such information may also be obtained from the District at 206 West Evans Street, Saint Jo, Texas 76265; Attention: Superintendent of Schools. The telephone number for the District is (940) 995-2668.

#### **Annual Reports**

The District will provide certain updated financial information and operating data to the MSRB. The information to be updated includes all quantitative financial information and operating data with respect to the District of the general type included in APPENDIX D to this official statement, which is customarily prepared by the District and publicly available. The District will update and provide this information within six months after the end of each fiscal year ending in and after 2018.

The District may provide updated information in full text or may incorporate by reference certain other publicly available documents, as permitted by SEC Rule 15c2-12. The updated information will include audited financial statements for the District, if the District commissions an audit and it is completed by the required time. If audited financial statements are not provided by that time, the District will provide unaudited financial statements for the applicable fiscal year to the MSRB with the financial information and operating data and will file the annual audit report when and if the same becomes available. Any such financial statements will be prepared in accordance with the accounting principles described in the District's annual financial statements or such other accounting principles as the District may be required to employ from time to time pursuant to state law or regulation.

The District's current fiscal year end is August 31. Accordingly, it must provide updated information by the end of February in each year, unless the District changes its fiscal year. If the District changes its fiscal year, it will notify the MSRB of the change.

#### **Notice of Certain Events**

The District will also provide timely notices of certain events to the MSRB. The District will provide notice of any of the following events with respect to the Bonds to the MSRB in a timely manner (but not in excess of ten business days after the occurrence of the event): (1) principal and interest payment delinquencies; (2) non-payment related defaults, if material; (3) unscheduled draws on debt service reserves reflecting financial difficulties; (4) unscheduled draws on credit enhancements reflecting financial difficulties; (5) substitution of credit or liquidity providers, or their failure to perform; (6) adverse tax opinions, the issuance by the Internal Revenue Service of proposed or final determinations of taxability, Notices of Proposed Issue (IRS Form 5701-TEB), or other material notices or determinations with respect to the tax status of the Bonds, or other material events affecting the tax status of the Bonds; (7) modifications to rights of holders of the Bonds, if material; (8) Bond calls, if material, and tender offers; (9) defeasances; (10) release, substitution, or sale of property securing repayment of the Bonds, if material; (11) rating changes; (12) bankruptcy, insolvency, receivership, or similar event of the District, which shall occur as described below; (13) the consummation of a merger, consolidation, or acquisition involving the District or the sale of all or substantially all of its assets, other than in the ordinary course of business, the entry into of a definitive agreement to undertake such an action or the termination of a definitive agreement relating to any such actions, other than pursuant to its terms, if material; and (14) appointment of a successor or additional paying agent/registrars or the change of name of a paying agent/registrars, if material. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide annual financial information in accordance with their agreement described above under "Annual Reports". Neither the Bonds nor the Order make any provision for debt service reserves, credit enhancement (except for the Permanent School Fund guarantee), or liquidity enhancement. In addition, the District will provide timely notice of any failure by the District to provide information, data, or financial statements in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports". The District will provide each notice described in this paragraph to the MSRB.

For these purposes, any event described in clause (12) of in the immediately preceding paragraph is considered to occur when any of the following occur: the appointment of a receiver, fiscal agent, or similar officer for the District in a proceeding under the United States Bankruptcy Code or in any other proceeding under state or federal law in which a court or governmental authority has assumed jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District, or if such jurisdiction has been assumed by leaving the existing governing body and officials or officers in possession but subject to the supervision and orders of a court or governmental authority, or the entry of an order confirming a plan of reorganization, arrangement, or liquidation by a court or governmental authority having supervision or jurisdiction over substantially all of the assets or business of the District.

#### **Availability of Information**

All information and documentation filing required to be made by the District in accordance with its undertaking made for the Bonds will be made with the MSRB in electronic format in accordance with MSRB guidelines, by an through EMMA. Access to such filings will be provided, without charge to the general public, by the MSRB through EMMA at [www.emma.msrb.org](http://www.emma.msrb.org).

With respect to debt of the District issued prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the District remains obligated to make annual required filings, as well as notices of certain events, under its continuing disclosure obligations relating to those debt obligations (which includes a continuing obligation to make such filings with the Texas state information depository (the "SID")). Prior to the EMMA Effective Date, the Municipal Advisory Council of Texas (the "MAC") had been designated by the State and approved by the SEC staff as a qualified SID. Subsequent to the EMMA Effective Date, the MAC entered into a Subscription Agreement with the MSRB pursuant to which the MSRB makes available to the MAC, in electronic format, all Texas-issuer continuing disclosure documents and related information posted to EMMA's website simultaneously with such posting. Until the District receives notice of a change in this contractual agreement between the MAC and EMMA or of a failure of either party to perform as specified thereunder, the District has determined, in reliance on guidance from the MAC, that making its continuing disclosure filings solely with the MSRB will satisfy its obligations to make filings with the SID pursuant to its continuing disclosure agreements entered into prior to the EMMA Effective Date.

## Limitations and Amendments

The District has agreed to update information and to provide notices of events only as described above. The District has not agreed to provide other information that may be relevant or material to a complete presentation of its financial results of operations, condition, or prospects or agreed to update any information that has been provided except as described above. The District makes no representation or warranty concerning such information or concerning its usefulness to a decision to invest in or sell Bonds at any future date. The District disclaims any contractual or tort liability for damages resulting in whole or in part from any breach of its continuing disclosure agreement or from any statement made pursuant to its agreement, although holders of Bonds may seek a writ of mandamus to compel the District to comply with its agreement. Nothing in this paragraph is intended or shall act to disclaim, waive or limit the District's duties under federal or state securities laws.

The District may amend its continuing disclosure agreement to adapt to changed circumstances that arise from a change in legal requirements, a change in law, or a change in the identity, nature, status, or type of operations of the District, if, but only if, (1) the agreement, as so amended, would have permitted underwriters to purchase or sell Bonds in the initial primary offering in compliance with the Rule, taking into account any amendments or interpretations of the Rule to the date of such amendment, as well as such changed circumstances, and (2) either (a) the holders of a majority in aggregate principal amount of the outstanding Bonds consent or (b) any qualified person unaffiliated with the District (such as nationally recognized bond counsel) determines that the amendment will not materially impair the interests of the holders and beneficial owners of the Bonds. The District may also amend or repeal the provisions of this continuing disclosure agreement if the SEC amends or repeals the applicable provision of the Rule or a court of final jurisdiction enters judgment that such provisions of the Rule are invalid, but only if and to the extent that the provisions of this sentence would not prevent an underwriter from lawfully purchasing or selling Bonds in the primary offering of the Bonds. If the District amends its agreement, it has agreed to include with the financial information and operating data next provided, in accordance with its agreement described above under "Annual Reports" an explanation, in narrative form, of the reasons for the amendment and of the impact of any change in the type of information and operating data so provided.

## Compliance with Prior Undertakings

The District has not previously entered into a continuing disclosure agreement in accordance with the Rule.

## LITIGATION

In the opinion of District officials, except as may be described in this Official Statement, the District is not a party to any litigation or other proceeding pending or to their knowledge threatened, in any court, agency or other administrative body (either state or federal) which, if decided adversely to the District, would have a material adverse effect on the financial condition of the District.

At the time of the initial delivery of the Bonds, the District will provide the Purchaser with a certificate to the effect that no litigation of any nature has been filed or is then pending challenging the issuance of the Bonds or that affects the payment and security of the Bonds or in any other manner questioning the issuance, sale, or delivery of the Bonds

## FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The statements contained in this Official Statement, and in any other information provided by the District, that are not purely historical, are forward-looking statements, including statements regarding the District's expectations, hopes, intentions, or strategies regarding the future. Readers should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. All forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement are based on information available to the District on the date hereof, and the District assumes no obligation to update any such forward-looking statements. It is important to note that the District's actual results could differ materially from those in such forward-looking statements.

The forward-looking statements herein are necessarily based on various assumptions and estimates and are inherently subject to various risks and uncertainties, including risks and uncertainties relating to the possible invalidity of the underlying assumptions and estimates and possible changes or developments in social, economic, business, industry, market, legal and regulatory circumstances and conditions and actions taken or omitted to be taken by third parties, including customers, suppliers, business partners and competitors, and legislative, judicial and other governmental authorities and officials. Assumptions related to the foregoing involve judgments with respect to, among other things, future economic, competitive, and market conditions and future business decisions, all of which are difficult or impossible to predict accurately and many of which are beyond the control of the District. Any of such assumptions could be inaccurate and, therefore, there can be no assurance that the forward-looking statements included in this Official Statement would prove to be accurate.

## WINNING BIDDER

After requesting competitive bids for the Bonds, the District accepted the bid of \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Purchaser" or the "Initial Purchaser") to purchase the Bonds at the interest rates shown on page ii of this Official Statement at a price of par, plus a cash premium of \$\_\_\_\_\_, plus accrued interest on the Bonds from their Dated Date to their date of initial delivery. The District can give no assurance that any trading market will be developed for the Bonds after their sale by the District to the Purchaser. The District has no control over the price at which the Bonds are subsequently sold and the initial yield at which the Bonds will be priced and reoffered will be established by and will be the responsibility of the Purchaser.

## CERTIFICATION OF THE OFFICIAL STATEMENT

At the time of payment for and delivery of the Initial Bonds, the Purchaser will be furnished a certificate, executed by proper officials of the District, acting in their official capacities, to the effect that to the best of their knowledge and belief: (a) the descriptions and statements of or pertaining to the District contained in its Official Statement, and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto, for the Bonds, on the date of such Official Statement, on the date of sale of said Bonds and the acceptance of the best bid therefor, and on the date of the delivery, were and are true and correct in all material respects; (b) insofar as the District and its affairs, including its financial affairs, are concerned, such Official Statement did not and does not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading; (c) insofar as the descriptions and statements including financial data, of or pertaining to entities, other than the District, and their activities contained in such Official Statement are concerned, such statements and data have been obtained from sources which the District believes to be reliable and the District has no reason to believe that they are untrue in any material respect; and (d) there has been no material adverse change in the financial condition of the District, since August 31, 2017, the date of the last financial statements of the District appearing in the Official Statement.

**CONCLUDING STATEMENT**

No person has been authorized to give any information or to make any representations other than those contained in this Official Statement, and if given or made, such other information or representations must not be relied upon as having been authorized by the District. This Official Statement does not constitute an offer to sell or solicitation of an offer to buy in any state in which such offer or solicitation is not authorized or in which the person making such offer or solicitation is not qualified to do so or to any person to whom it is unlawful to make such offer or solicitation.

The information set forth herein has been obtained from the District's records, audited financial statements and other sources which the District considers to be reliable. There is no guarantee that any of the assumptions or estimates contained herein will ever be realized. All of the summaries of the statutes, documents and the Order contained in this Official Statement are made subject to all of the provisions of such statutes, documents, and the Order. These summaries do not purport to be complete statements of such provisions and reference is made to such summarized documents for further information. Reference is made to official documents in all respects. All information contained in this Official Statement is subject, in all respects, to the complete body of information contained in the original sources thereof. In particular, no opinion or representation is rendered as to whether any projection will approximate actual results, and all opinions, estimates and assumption, whether or not expressly identified as such, should not be considered statements of fact.

References to web site addresses presented herein are for informational purposes only and may be in the form of a hyperlink solely for the reader's convenience. Unless specified otherwise, such web sites and the information or links contained therein are not incorporated into, and are not part of, this Official Statement for purposes of, and as that term is defined in, SEC Rule 15c2-12.

The Order authorizing the issuance of the Bonds will also approve the form and content of this Official Statement and any addenda, supplement or amendment thereto and authorize its further use in the re-offering of the Bonds by the Purchaser.

This Official Statement will be approved by the Board for distribution in accordance with the provisions of the SEC's rule codified at 17 C.F.R. Section 240.15c2-12, as amended.

*/s/*

\_\_\_\_\_  
President, Board of Trustees

ATTEST:

*/s/*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary, Board of Trustees

**APPENDIX A**

**FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF THE DISTRICT**

# SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

## Financial Information

### ASSESSED VALUATION <sup>(1)</sup>

2018/19 Total Valuation.....		\$ 479,401,015
Less Exemptions & Deductions <sup>(2)</sup> :		
State Homestead Exemption	\$ 10,061,001	
State Over-65 Exemption	1,974,311	
Disabled Homestead Exemption Loss	544,050	
Veterans Exemption Loss	72,060	
Pollution Control Exemption Loss	267,070	
Productivity Loss	275,588,118	
Homestead Cap Loss	161,821	
	\$ 288,668,431	
2018/19 Net Taxable Valuation .....		\$ 190,732,584

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Certified Values from the Montague and Cooke County Appraisal Districts. The passage of a Texas Constitutional Amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000. See "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES -- Residential homestead Exemptions" in the Official Statement.  
<sup>(2)</sup> Excludes the values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers which totaled \$2,545,726 in 2017/18.

### VOTED GENERAL OBLIGATION DEBT

Unlimited Tax Bonds Outstanding		\$ -
Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		6,600,000
Total Unlimited Tax Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>		6,600,000
Less: Interest & Sinking Fund Balance (As of August 31, 2018) <sup>(2)</sup>		-
Net General Obligation Debt		\$ 6,600,000
Ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation <sup>(3)</sup>	3.46%	
2019 Population Estimate <sup>(4)</sup>	1,289	
Per Capita Net Taxable Valuation	\$147,969	
Per Capita Net G.O. Debt	\$5,120	

<sup>(1)</sup> Preliminary, subject to change.  
<sup>(2)</sup> Source: Saint Jo ISD.  
<sup>(3)</sup> The ratio of Net G.O. Debt to Net Taxable Valuation above, does not reflect the portion of the District's outstanding debt service that is payable from any debt subsidies that may be provided by the State of Texas. The District does not expect to receive state funding assistance for voted bond debt service for the 2018/19 fiscal year. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement and "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information relative to the District's outstanding obligations.  
<sup>(4)</sup> Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas.

### PROPERTY TAX RATES AND COLLECTIONS

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation		% Collections <sup>(4)</sup>	
	Valuation	Tax Rate	Current <sup>(5)</sup>	Total <sup>(5)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 105,710,575 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1.5100 <sup>(6)</sup>	96.13%	101.63%
2007/08	113,800,475 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.3100 <sup>(6)</sup>	97.24%	105.37%
2008/09	166,840,323 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2800	96.17%	98.33%
2009/10	178,741,192 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2700	97.26%	99.51%
2010/11	175,539,141 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2500	97.63%	99.81%
2011/12	214,464,515 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2450	98.40%	102.23%
2012/13	254,659,700 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2300	98.09%	99.23%
2013/14	261,092,003 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2300	95.01%	95.94%
2014/15	268,557,055 <sup>(1)</sup>	1.2270	98.51%	103.68%
2015/16	242,783,322 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.2100	97.98%	99.77%
2016/17	191,365,011 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	97.90%	99.28%
2017/18	187,812,046 <sup>(1)(2)</sup>	1.1700	98.00% <sup>(7)</sup>	100.00% <sup>(7)</sup>
2018/19	190,732,584 <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	1.1700		

<sup>(1)</sup> Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division. See the Assessed Valuation section in this Appendix for additional information.  
<sup>(2)</sup> The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.  
<sup>(3)</sup> Certified Values from the Montague and Cooke County Appraisal Districts.  
<sup>(4)</sup> Source: Saint Jo ISD Audited Financial Statements.  
<sup>(5)</sup> Excludes penalties and interest.  
<sup>(6)</sup> The declines in the District's Maintenance & Operation Tax for the 2006/07 and 2007/08 fiscal years are a function of House Bill 1 adopted by the Texas Legislature in May 2006. See "STATE AND LOCAL FUNDING OF SCHOOL DISTRICTS IN TEXAS" and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.  
<sup>(7)</sup> Estimate as of December 2018.

**TAX RATE DISTRIBUTION <sup>(1)</sup>**

	2014/15	2015/16	2016/17	2017/18	2018/19
Maintenance & Operations	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700	\$1.1700
Debt Service	\$0.0570	\$0.0400	\$0.0000	\$0.0000	\$0.0000
<b>Total Tax Rate</b>	<b>\$1.2270</b>	<b>\$1.2100</b>	<b>\$1.1700</b>	<b>\$1.1700</b>	<b>\$1.1700</b>

<sup>(1)</sup> On November 6, 2007 the District successfully held a tax ratification election at which the voters of the District approved a maintenance and operations tax rate not to exceed \$1.17.

**VALUATION AND FUNDED DEBT HISTORY**

Fiscal Year	Net Taxable Valuation	Bond Debt Outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>	Ratio Debt to A.V. <sup>(2)</sup>
2006/07	\$ 105,710,575	\$ 1,150,000	1.09%
2007/08	113,800,475	1,050,000	0.92%
2008/09	166,840,323	950,000	0.57%
2009/10	178,741,192	850,000	0.48%
2010/11	175,539,141	725,000	0.41%
2011/12	214,464,515	600,000	0.28%
2012/13	254,659,700	475,000	0.19%
2013/14	261,092,003	350,000	0.13%
2014/15	268,557,055	225,000	0.08%
2015/16	242,783,322	100,000	0.04%
2016/17	191,365,011	-	0.00%
2017/18	187,812,046	-	0.00%
2018/19	190,732,584 <sup>(3)</sup>	6,600,000 <sup>(4)</sup>	3.46%

<sup>(1)</sup> At Fiscal Year End.

<sup>(2)</sup> See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement, "DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS" in this Appendix and see the "Audited Financial Report Fiscal Year Ended August 31, 2017" in Appendix D for more information.

<sup>(3)</sup> Certified Values from the Montague and Cooke County Appraisal Districts.

<sup>(4)</sup> Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

**ESTIMATED OVERLAPPING DEBT STATEMENT**

Taxing Body	Amount	Percent Overlapping	Amount Overlapping
Cooke County	\$ 4,255,000	1.88%	\$ 79,994
Montague County	1,385,000	10.74%	148,749
North Central Texas CCD	12,210,000	1.77%	216,117
<b>Total Overlapping Debt <sup>(1)</sup></b>			<b>\$ 444,860</b>
Saint Jo Independent School District <sup>(2)</sup>			6,600,000
<b>Total Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt <sup>(2)</sup></b>			<b>\$ 7,044,860</b>
<b>Ratio of Net Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt to Net Taxable Valuation</b>		<b>3.69%</b>	
<b>Per Capita Direct &amp; Overlapping Debt</b>		<b>\$5,465</b>	

<sup>(1)</sup> Equals gross-debt less self-supporting debt.

<sup>(2)</sup> Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

Source: Municipal Advisory Council of Texas. The District has not independently verified the accuracy or completeness of such information (except for the amounts relating to the District), and no person should rely upon such information as being accurate or complete.



**PRINCIPAL TAXPAYERS**

**2018/19 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(1)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
EOG Resources Inc.	Oil & Gas	\$ 23,264,360	12.20%
WI Texas Frac LLC	Oil & Gas	17,671,080	9.26%
Copano Field Services	Oil & Gas	8,378,290	4.39%
Pecan Pipeline	Oil & Gas	7,245,380	3.80%
Wolf Ridge Wind LLC	Wind Energy	4,553,850	2.39%
WI Texas Frac Real Estate LLC	Real Estate	4,286,696	2.25%
Texas New Mexico Power Co.	Electric Utility	2,264,910	1.19%
MGST Ranch LP	Land	1,841,640	0.97%
Eagleridge Operating LLC	Oil & Gas	1,695,350	0.89%
Alan & Denise Chamberlain	Residential	1,088,380	0.57%
		<u>\$ 72,289,936</u>	<u>37.90%</u>

**2017/18 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
EOG Resources Inc.	Oil & Gas	\$ 25,087,030	13.36%
Copano Field Services	Oil & Gas	8,702,250	4.63%
Wolf Ridge Wind LLC	Wind Energy	7,698,550	4.10%
Pecan Pipeline	Oil & Gas	7,232,480	3.85%
WI Texas Frac LLC	Oil & Gas	7,226,700	3.85%
CDM Resource Management Ltd.	Oil & Gas	4,137,770	2.20%
WI Texas Frac Real Estate LLC	Real Estate	4,040,582	2.15%
Texas New Mexico Power Co.	Electric Utility	2,300,830	1.23%
MGST Ranch LP	Land	1,718,120	0.91%
US Energy Development Corp.	Oil & Gas	1,659,780	0.88%
		<u>\$ 69,804,092</u>	<u>37.17%</u>

**2016/17 Top Ten Taxpayers <sup>(2)</sup>**

Name of Taxpayer	Type of Business	Taxable Value	% of Net Valuation
EOG Resources Inc.	Oil & Gas	\$ 35,511,946	18.56%
Wolf Ridge Wind LLC	Wind Energy	9,433,500	4.93%
Copano Field Services	Oil & Gas	9,297,040	4.86%
CDM Resource Management Ltd.	Oil & Gas	8,689,000	4.54%
Pecan Pipeline	Oil & Gas	7,912,960	4.14%
Texas New Mexico Power Co.	Electric Utility	2,196,630	1.15%
Eleon Operators	Oil & Gas	1,926,210	1.01%
US Energy Development Corp.	Oil & Gas	1,630,570	0.85%
MGST Ranch LP	Land	1,569,770	0.82%
DDM Ranch LLC	Ranch	1,136,292	0.59%
		<u>\$ 79,303,918</u>	<u>41.44%</u>

(1) Source: Montague and Cooke County Appraisal Districts.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

Note: As shown in the table above, the top ten taxpayers in the District account for in excess of 37% of the District's tax base. Adverse developments in economic conditions, especially in the oil & gas industry, could adversely impact these businesses and, consequently, the tax values in the District, resulting in less local tax revenue. If any major taxpayer, or a combination of top taxpayers, were to default in the payment of taxes, the ability of the District to make timely payment of debt service on the Bonds may be dependent on its ability to enforce and liquidate its tax lien, which is a time consuming process that may only occur annually. See "REGISTERED OWNERS' REMEDIES" and "AD VALOREM TAX PROCEDURES – District's Rights in the Event of Tax Delinquencies" in this Official Statement.

**CLASSIFICATION OF ASSESSED VALUATION BY USE CATEGORY**

<u>Category</u>	<u>2018/19</u> <sup>(1)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2017/18</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2016/17</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 34,550,158	7.21%	\$ 33,286,090	7.10%	\$ 32,509,062	6.88%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	487,870	0.10%	487,870	0.10%	533,640	0.11%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	372,000	0.08%	374,550	0.08%	370,660	0.08%
Real, Acreage	285,753,874	59.61%	276,404,676	58.92%	276,190,074	58.47%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	57,998,428	12.10%	58,778,645	12.53%	55,741,279	11.80%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	16,933,401	3.53%	20,374,061	4.34%	22,606,640	4.79%
Oil & Gas	43,369,810	9.05%	43,797,220	9.34%	43,904,480	9.30%
Utilities	13,900,240	2.90%	20,302,650	4.33%	25,916,730	5.49%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	2,000,866	0.42%	1,665,880	0.36%	1,003,933	0.21%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	22,625,370	4.72%	12,364,480	2.64%	12,118,280	2.57%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	1,406,258	0.29%	1,284,124	0.27%	1,428,620	0.30%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	2,740	0.00%	750	0.00%	750	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	-	0.00%	-	0.00%	-	0.00%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 479,401,015</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 469,120,996</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 472,324,148</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 161,821		\$ 280,339		\$ 480,633	
Productivity Loss	275,588,118		268,304,460		268,058,635	
Exemptions	12,918,492 <sup>(3)</sup>		12,724,151 <sup>(3)</sup>		12,419,869 <sup>(3)</sup>	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(4)</sup>	<u>\$ 288,668,431</u>		<u>\$ 281,308,950</u>		<u>\$ 280,959,137</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 190,732,584</b>		<b>\$ 187,812,046</b>		<b>\$ 191,365,011</b>	

<u>Category</u>	<u>2015/16</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2014/15</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>	<u>2013/14</u> <sup>(2)</sup>	<u>% of</u> <u>Total</u>
Real, Residential, Single-Family	\$ 30,144,014	5.88%	\$ 30,140,805	5.80%	\$ 29,739,739	5.81%
Real, Residential, Multi-Family	529,910	0.10%	529,910	0.10%	529,910	0.10%
Real, Vacant Lots/Tracts	372,020	0.07%	348,910	0.07%	342,320	0.07%
Real, Acreage	265,561,415	51.76%	249,638,933	48.03%	249,151,579	48.67%
Real, Farm & Ranch Improvements	51,892,273	10.11%	50,730,020	9.76%	49,418,467	9.65%
Real, Commercial & Industrial	24,445,870	4.76%	25,422,907	4.89%	27,967,903	5.46%
Oil & Gas	96,395,880	18.79%	113,234,610	21.79%	99,261,210	19.39%
Utilities	27,526,190	5.37%	25,221,890	4.85%	22,392,560	4.37%
Tangible Personal, Commercial	1,021,136	0.20%	1,110,160	0.21%	1,100,180	0.21%
Tangible Personal, Industrial	13,709,090	2.67%	22,037,670	4.24%	30,804,400	6.02%
Tangible Personal, Mobile Homes & Other	1,441,010	0.28%	1,293,880	0.25%	1,218,360	0.24%
Tangible Personal, Residential Inventory	750	0.00%	750	0.00%	2,090	0.00%
Tangible Personal, Special Inventory	-	0.00%	370	0.00%	370	0.00%
<b>Total Appraised Value</b>	<b>\$ 513,039,558</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 519,710,815</b>	<b>100.00%</b>	<b>\$ 511,929,088</b>	<b>100.00%</b>
<b>Less:</b>						
Homestead Cap Adjustment	\$ 123,574		\$ 229,376		\$ 357,186	
Productivity Loss	257,651,300		241,211,173		240,626,294	
Exemptions	12,481,362 <sup>(3)</sup>		9,713,211		9,853,605	
Total Exemptions/Deductions <sup>(4)</sup>	<u>\$ 270,256,236</u>		<u>\$ 251,153,760</u>		<u>\$ 250,837,085</u>	
<b>Net Taxable Assessed Valuation</b>	<b>\$ 242,783,322</b>		<b>\$ 268,557,055</b>		<b>\$ 261,092,003</b>	

(1) Source: Certified Values from the Montague and Cooke County Appraisal Districts.

(2) Source: Comptroller of Public Accounts - Property Tax Division.

(3) The passage of a Texas constitutional amendment on November 3, 2015 increased the homestead exemption from \$15,000 to \$25,000.

(4) Excludes values on which property taxes are frozen for persons 65 years of age or older and disabled taxpayers.

**PRINCIPAL REPAYMENT SCHEDULE**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Bonds	Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>	Total <sup>(1)</sup>	Bonds Unpaid At Year End	Percent of Principal Retired
2019	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 6,600,000.00	0.00%
2020		125,000.00	125,000.00	6,475,000.00	1.89%
2021		150,000.00	150,000.00	6,325,000.00	4.17%
2022		180,000.00	180,000.00	6,145,000.00	6.89%
2023		185,000.00	185,000.00	5,960,000.00	9.70%
2024		195,000.00	195,000.00	5,765,000.00	12.65%
2025		200,000.00	200,000.00	5,565,000.00	15.68%
2026		205,000.00	205,000.00	5,360,000.00	18.79%
2027		210,000.00	210,000.00	5,150,000.00	21.97%
2028		215,000.00	215,000.00	4,935,000.00	25.23%
2029		225,000.00	225,000.00	4,710,000.00	28.64%
2030		235,000.00	235,000.00	4,475,000.00	32.20%
2031		240,000.00	240,000.00	4,235,000.00	35.83%
2032		250,000.00	250,000.00	3,985,000.00	39.62%
2033		260,000.00	260,000.00	3,725,000.00	43.56%
2034		275,000.00	275,000.00	3,450,000.00	47.73%
2035		285,000.00	285,000.00	3,165,000.00	52.05%
2036		295,000.00	295,000.00	2,870,000.00	56.52%
2037		305,000.00	305,000.00	2,565,000.00	61.14%
2038		320,000.00	320,000.00	2,245,000.00	65.98%
2039		335,000.00	335,000.00	1,910,000.00	71.06%
2040		345,000.00	345,000.00	1,565,000.00	76.29%
2041		365,000.00	365,000.00	1,200,000.00	81.82%
2042		380,000.00	380,000.00	820,000.00	87.58%
2043		400,000.00	400,000.00	420,000.00	93.64%
2044		420,000.00	420,000.00	-	100.00%
Total	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 6,600,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 6,600,000.00</u>		

(1) Preliminary, subject to change.

**DEBT SERVICE REQUIREMENTS**

Fiscal Year Ending 8/31	Outstanding Debt Service	Plus: The Bonds <sup>(1)</sup>			Combined Total <sup>(1) (2)</sup>
		Principal	Interest	Total	
2019	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 152,596.35	\$ 152,596.35	\$ 152,596.35
2020		125,000.00	259,718.76	384,718.76	384,718.76
2021		150,000.00	255,593.76	405,593.76	405,593.76
2022		180,000.00	250,643.76	430,643.76	430,643.76
2023		185,000.00	245,168.76	430,168.76	430,168.76
2024		195,000.00	239,468.76	434,468.76	434,468.76
2025		200,000.00	233,543.76	433,543.76	433,543.76
2026		205,000.00	227,468.75	432,468.75	432,468.75
2027		210,000.00	221,243.76	431,243.76	431,243.76
2028		215,000.00	214,868.76	429,868.76	429,868.76
2029		225,000.00	207,846.88	432,846.88	432,846.88
2030		235,000.00	199,350.00	434,350.00	434,350.00
2031		240,000.00	189,850.00	429,850.00	429,850.00
2032		250,000.00	180,050.00	430,050.00	430,050.00
2033		260,000.00	169,850.00	429,850.00	429,850.00
2034		275,000.00	159,150.00	434,150.00	434,150.00
2035		285,000.00	147,950.00	432,950.00	432,950.00
2036		295,000.00	136,350.00	431,350.00	431,350.00
2037		305,000.00	124,350.00	429,350.00	429,350.00
2038		320,000.00	111,850.00	431,850.00	431,850.00
2039		335,000.00	98,750.00	433,750.00	433,750.00
2040		345,000.00	85,150.00	430,150.00	430,150.00
2041		365,000.00	69,125.00	434,125.00	434,125.00
2042		380,000.00	50,500.00	430,500.00	430,500.00
2043		400,000.00	31,000.00	431,000.00	431,000.00
2044		420,000.00	10,500.00	430,500.00	430,500.00
	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 6,600,000.00</u>	<u>\$ 4,271,937.06</u>	<u>\$ 10,871,937.06</u>	<u>\$ 10,871,937.06</u>

(1) Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) Based on its wealth per student, the District does not expect to receive any state financial assistance for the payment of debt service for the fiscal year 2018/19. The amount of State aid for debt service may substantially differ from year to year, depending on a number of factors, including amounts, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the Texas Legislature. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**TAX ADEQUACY WITH RESPECT TO THE DISTRICT'S BONDS**

Projected Maximum Debt Service Requirement <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 434,468.76
Projected State Financial Assistance <sup>(2)</sup>	-
Projected Net Debt Service Requirement	\$ 434,468.76
\$0.23244 Tax Rate @ 98% Collections Produces	\$ 434,468.77
2018/19 Certified Net Taxable Assessed Valuation	\$ 190,732,584

(1) Includes the Bonds. Preliminary, subject to change.

(2) The amount of state financial assistance for debt service, if any, may differ substantially each year depending on a variety of factors, including the amount, if any, appropriated for that purpose by the state legislature and a school district's wealth per student. See "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM" in the Official Statement.

**AUTHORIZED BUT UNISSUED BONDS**

Following the issuance of the Bonds, the District will not have authorized but unissued unlimited ad valorem tax bonds from the November 6, 2018 or any other election. The District may incur other financial obligations payable from its collection of taxes and other sources of revenue, including maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance tax notes payable from its collection of maintenance taxes, public property finance contractual obligations, delinquent tax notes, and leases for various purposes payable from State appropriations and surplus maintenance taxes.

COMPARATIVE STATEMENT OF GENERAL FUND REVENUES AND EXPENDITURES <sup>(1)</sup>

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
<b>Beginning Fund Balance</b>	\$ 2,293,569	\$ 2,692,807	\$ 3,094,930	\$ 2,826,002	\$ 2,284,086
<b>Revenues:</b>					
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 3,191,527	\$ 3,624,415	\$ 3,361,121	\$ 2,960,658	\$ 2,352,393
State Sources	275,535	220,123	228,919	329,660	688,443
Federal Sources & Other	25,113	28,692	35,657	88,238	71,809
<b>Total Revenues</b>	\$ 3,492,175	\$ 3,873,230	\$ 3,625,697	\$ 3,378,556	\$ 3,112,645
<b>Expenditures:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 1,460,944	\$ 1,558,550	\$ 1,618,904	\$ 1,553,835	\$ 1,610,867
Instructional Resources & Media Services	43,298	29,477	35,483	34,117	33,907
Curriculum & Instructional Staff Development	3,580	7,201	4,012	4,033	5,387
Instructional Leadership	-	-	-	3,986	5,314
School Leadership	190,700	212,980	214,720	224,085	234,371
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	36,313	29,654	28,915	53,751	51,794
Health Services	4,675	4,262	5,719	4,277	6,338
Student (Pupil) Transportation	80,676	75,804	107,872	62,634	62,299
Food Services	2,391	2,818	2,874	2,931	3,173
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	171,888	187,798	233,789	231,788	183,380
General Administration	232,761	245,571	250,235	284,171	224,365
Plant Maintenance and Operations	350,467	377,226	512,699	474,335	447,874
Security and Monitoring Services	66,505	35,989	5,763	14,251	9,309
Data Processing Services	19,883	23,031	23,757	24,531	23,347
Debt Service - Principal on Long Term Debt	-	-	-	-	-
Facilities Acquisition and Construction	218,246	5,335	33,556	518,174	127,752
Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	152,233	524,946	666,801	668,334	234,899
Payments to Shared Service Arrangements	55,501	54,889	64,083	50,189	43,838
Other Intergovernmental Charges	54,930	44,230	54,474	52,158	39,862
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	\$ 3,144,991	\$ 3,419,761	\$ 3,863,656	\$ 4,261,580	\$ 3,348,076
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues over Expenditures	\$ 347,184	\$ 453,469	\$ (237,959)	\$ (883,024)	\$ (235,431)
<b>Other Resources and (Uses):</b>					
Sale of Real and Personal Property	\$ 1,226	\$ 1,800	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Transfers In	75,000	-	-	377,948	-
Transfers Out (Use)	(24,172)	(17,472)	(30,969)	(36,841)	(25,820)
<b>Total Other Resources (Uses)</b>	\$ 52,054	\$ (15,672)	\$ (30,969)	\$ 341,107	\$ (25,820)
Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues and Other Sources over Expenditures and Other Uses	\$ 399,238	\$ 437,797	\$ (268,928)	\$ (541,917)	\$ (261,251)
Prior Period State Funding Adjustment	\$ -	\$ (35,674)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Ending Fund Balance</b>	\$ 2,692,807	\$ 3,094,930	\$ 2,826,002	\$ 2,284,085	\$ 2,022,835 <sup>(2)</sup>

(1) See "MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS - Economic Factors and Next Year's Budgets and Rates" in Appendix D hereto for a discussion of the 2017/18 budget and "CURRENT PUBLIC SCHOOL FINANCE SYSTEM - Possible Effects of Wealth Transfer Provisions on the District's Financial Condition" in the Official Statement.

(2) The District estimates that its General Fund balance for the Fiscal Year ending August 31, 2018 will total approximately \$2,164,224.

**CHANGE IN NET ASSETS <sup>(1)</sup>**

	Fiscal Year Ended August 31				
	2013	2014	2015	2016	2017
<b>Revenues:</b>					
<b>Program Revenues:</b>					
Charges for Services	\$ 89,649	\$ 73,786	\$ 94,339	\$ 95,768	\$ 56,562
Operating Grants and Contributions	336,068	414,022	367,714	498,531	433,075
<b>General Revenues:</b>					
Property Taxes Levied for General Purposes	3,117,816	3,680,166	3,152,599	2,852,920	2,199,469
Property Taxes Levied for Debt Service	159,744	188,865	153,507	91,162	1,190
State Aid - Formula Grants	165,999	95,674	99,949	201,634	559,179
Grants and Contributions Not Restricted	-	-	-	-	-
Investment Earnings	3,050	6,334	6,379	5,794	10,518
Miscellaneous	24,306	26,350	36,381	49,906	122,577
	<u>\$ 3,896,632</u>	<u>\$ 4,485,197</u>	<u>\$ 3,910,868</u>	<u>\$ 3,795,715</u>	<u>\$ 3,382,570</u>
<b>Expenses:</b>					
Instruction	\$ 1,718,810	\$ 1,875,195	\$ 1,895,175	\$ 1,896,535	\$ 1,915,665
Instruction Resources & Media Services	43,298	29,477	35,251	35,698	36,292
Curriculum & Staff Development	3,580	7,201	4,012	4,383	5,746
School Leadership	191,723	214,003	213,418	237,210	248,227
Instructional Leadership	5,650	-	-	3,986	5,314
Guidance, Counseling & Evaluation Services	36,313	29,654	28,682	56,585	53,565
Social Work Services	-	-	-	-	-
Health Services	4,675	4,262	5,719	4,277	6,338
Student Transportation	127,367	122,495	109,796	118,047	116,985
Food Service	132,406	134,245	136,056	159,594	160,335
Cocurricular/Extracurricular Activities	216,816	240,342	231,868	263,719	250,973
General Administration	216,840	248,830	250,201	293,039	232,886
Plant Maintenance & Operations	367,201	394,494	426,367	443,884	408,226
Security and Monitoring Services	585	42,581	12,354	28,068	23,062
Data Processing Services	19,883	23,031	23,757	24,531	23,347
Debt Service - Interest on Long-term Debt	23,300	17,050	10,800	4,800	-
Debt Service - Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	40	20	20	-
Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	152,233	524,946	666,801	668,334	234,899
Payments Related to Shared Service Agreements	55,501	54,889	64,083	50,189	43,838
Capital Outlay	-	-	-	-	9,500
Other Intergovernmental Charges	54,930	44,230	54,474	52,158	39,862
<b>Total Expenditures</b>	<u>\$ 3,371,111</u>	<u>\$ 4,006,965</u>	<u>\$ 4,168,833</u>	<u>\$ 4,345,057</u>	<u>\$ 3,815,060</u>
<b>Change in Net Assets</b>	\$ 525,521	\$ 478,232	\$ (257,965)	\$ (549,342)	\$ (432,490)
<b>Beginning Net Assets</b>	\$ 5,787,765	\$ 6,313,286	\$ 6,755,843	\$ 6,268,900	\$ 5,719,559
<b>Prior Period Adjustment</b>	\$ -	\$ (35,674) <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ (228,977) <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ -	\$ -
<b>Ending Net Assets</b>	<u>\$ 6,313,286</u>	<u>\$ 6,755,844</u>	<u>\$ 6,268,900</u>	<u>\$ 5,719,558</u>	<u>\$ 5,287,069</u>

(1) The foregoing information represents government-wide financial information provided in accordance with GASB 34, which the District adopted for the 2002 fiscal year.

(2) The prior period adjustment was a state aid correction.

(3) The prior period adjustment was from the District adopting GASB Statement No. 68 for Accounting and Reporting for Pensions.

**APPENDIX B**

**GENERAL INFORMATION REGARDING THE DISTRICT  
AND ITS ECONOMY**

## SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

### General and Economic Information

Marble Falls Independent School District (the "District") is located in Montague County, with a portion extending into Cooke County, is a mineral producing and agricultural area which includes the City of Saint Jo, a retail center located on U.S. Highway 82.

Montague County (the "County") is a north central Texas county bordering Oklahoma. The County is bordered on the north by the Red River.

Source: *Texas Municipal Report for Saint Jo ISD and Montague County.*

### Enrollment Statistics

<u>Year Ending 8/31</u>	<u>Enrollment</u>
2008	296
2009	282
2010	279
2011	293
2012	280
2013	282
2014	279
2015	257
2016	252
2017	270
2018	283
Current	299

### District Staff

Teachers	32
Auxiliary Personnel	9
Teachers' Aides & Secretaries	12
Administrators	3
Other (Counselors, RNs, Librarians)	<u>2</u>
	58

### Facilities

<u>Campus</u>	<u>Grades</u>	<u>Current Enrollment</u>	<u>Capacity</u>	<u>Year Built</u>	<u>Year of Addition/ Renovation</u>
Elementary School	EE-6	171	180	1956	1985, 1989, 1991
High School	7-12	128	150	1995	1997, 2016

### Principal Employers within the District

<u>Name of Company</u>	<u>Type of Business</u>	<u>Number of Employees</u>
Saint Jo ISD	Public School	58
Blue Ostrich	Winery	15
Arche	Winery	10
Lazy Heart	Restaurant	10
Saint Jo Farm & Ranch	Feed Store	10

### Unemployment Rates

	<u>October 2016</u>	<u>October 2017</u>	<u>October 2018</u>
Montague County	4.9%	3.3%	3.0%
State of Texas	4.7%	3.7%	3.5%

Source: *Texas Workforce Commission.*



**APPENDIX C**

**FORM OF LEGAL OPINION OF BOND COUNSEL**



Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP  
300 Convent Street, Suite 2100  
San Antonio, Texas 78205-3792  
United States

Tel +1 210 224 5575  
Fax +1 210 270 7205  
nortonrosefulbright.com

**DRAFT 12/13/2018**

IN REGARD to the authorization and issuance of the “Saint Jo Independent School District Unlimited Tax School Building Bonds, Series 2019” (the *Bonds*), dated January 15, 2019, in the aggregate original principal amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_, we have reviewed the legality and validity of the issuance thereof by the Saint Jo Independent School District (the *Issuer*). The Bonds are issuable in fully registered form only, in denominations of \$5,000 or any integral multiple thereof (within a Stated Maturity), and have Stated Maturities of February 15 in each of the years 2020 through 2044, unless redeemed prior to Stated Maturity in accordance with the terms stated on the face of the Bonds. Interest on the Bonds accrues from the dates, at the rates, in the manner, and is payable on the dates, all as provided in the order (the *Order*) authorizing the issuance of the Bonds. Capitalized terms used herein without definition shall have the meanings ascribed thereto in the Order.

WE HAVE SERVED AS BOND COUNSEL for the Issuer solely to pass upon the legality and validity of the issuance of the Bonds under the laws of the State of Texas and with respect to the exclusion of the interest on the Bonds from the gross income of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes and for no other purpose. We have not been requested to investigate or verify, and have not independently investigated or verified, any records, data, or other material relating to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer. We have not assumed any responsibility with respect to the financial condition or capabilities of the Issuer or the disclosure thereof in connection with the sale of the Bonds. We express no opinion and make no comment with respect to the sufficiency of the security for or the marketability of the Bonds. Our role in connection with the Issuer’s Official Statement prepared for use in connection with the sale of the Bonds has been limited as described therein.

WE HAVE EXAMINED the applicable and pertinent laws of the State of Texas and the United States of America. In rendering the opinions herein we rely upon (1) original or certified copies of the proceedings of the Issuer in connection with the issuance of the Bonds, including the Order; (2) customary certifications and opinions of officials of the Issuer; (3) certificates executed by officers of the Issuer relating to the expected use and investment of proceeds of the Bonds and certain other funds of the Issuer, and to certain other facts solely within the knowledge and control of the Issuer; and (4) such other documentation, including an examination of the Bond executed and delivered initially by the Issuer, and such matters of law as we deem relevant to the matters discussed below. In such examination, we have assumed the authenticity of all documents submitted to us as originals, the conformity to original copies of all documents submitted to us as certified copies, and the accuracy of the statements and information contained in such certificates.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP is a limited liability partnership registered under the laws of Texas.

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright LLP, Norton Rose Fulbright Australia, Norton Rose Fulbright Canada LLP and Norton Rose Fulbright South Africa Inc are separate legal entities and all of them are members of Norton Rose Fulbright Verein, a Swiss verein. Norton Rose Fulbright Verein helps coordinate the activities of the members but does not itself provide legal services to clients. Details of each entity, with certain regulatory information, are available at [nortonrosefulbright.com](http://nortonrosefulbright.com).

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of "SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019"**

We express no opinion concerning any effect on the following opinions which may result from changes in law effected after the date hereof.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS OUR OPINION that the Bonds have been duly authorized and issued in conformity with the laws of the State of Texas now in force and that the Bonds are valid and legally binding obligations of the Issuer enforceable in accordance with the terms and conditions described therein, except to the extent that the enforceability thereof may be affected by bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium, or other similar laws affecting creditors' rights or the exercise of judicial discretion in accordance with general principles of equity. The Bonds are payable from the proceeds of an ad valorem tax levied, without legal limit as to rate or amount, upon all taxable property in the Issuer.

BASED ON OUR EXAMINATION, IT IS FURTHER OUR OPINION that, assuming continuing compliance after the date hereof by the Issuer with the provisions of the Order and in reliance upon the representations and certifications of the Issuer made in a certificate of even date herewith pertaining to the use, expenditure, and investment of the proceeds of the Bonds, under existing statutes, regulations, published rulings, and court decisions (1) interest on the Bonds will be excludable from the gross income, as defined in section 61 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended to the date hereof (the *Code*), of the owners thereof for federal income tax purposes, pursuant to section 103 of the Code, and (2) interest on the Bonds will not be included in computing the alternative minimum taxable income of the owners thereof.

WE EXPRESS NO OTHER OPINION with respect to any other federal, state, or local tax consequences under present law or any proposed legislation resulting from the receipt or accrual of interest on, or the acquisition or disposition of, the Bonds. Ownership of tax-exempt obligations such as the Bonds may result in collateral federal tax consequences to, among others, financial institutions, life insurance companies, property and casualty insurance companies, certain foreign corporations doing business in the United States, S corporations with subchapter C earnings and profits, owners of an interest in a financial asset securitization investment trust, individual recipients of Social Security or Railroad Retirement Benefits, individuals otherwise qualifying for the earned income credit, and taxpayers who may be deemed to have incurred or continued indebtedness to purchase or carry, or who have paid or incurred certain expenses allocable to, tax-exempt obligations.

OUR OPINIONS ARE BASED on existing law, which is subject to change. Such opinions are further based on our knowledge of facts as of the date hereof. We assume no duty to update or supplement our opinions to reflect any facts or circumstances that may thereafter come to our attention or to reflect any changes in any law that may thereafter occur or become effective. Moreover, our opinions are not a guarantee of result and are not binding on the Internal Revenue Service; rather, such opinions represent our legal judgment based upon our review of existing law that we deem relevant to such opinions and in reliance upon the representations and covenants referenced above.

**Legal Opinion of Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP, San Antonio, Texas, in connection with the authorization and issuance of "SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT UNLIMITED TAX SCHOOL BUILDING BONDS, SERIES 2019"**

Norton Rose Fulbright US LLP

**APPENDIX D**

**AUDITED FINANCIAL REPORT  
FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017**

**SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**  
**ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT FOR THE YEAR ENDED**  
**AUGUST 31, 2017**

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ANNUAL FINANCIAL REPORT  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Exhibit</u>	<u>Page</u>
CERTIFICATE OF BOARD	1
Independent Auditors' Report	2-4
Management's Discussion and Analysis	5-13
<b><u>Basic Financial Statements</u></b>	
Government Wide Statements:	
A-1 Statement of Net Position	14
B-1 Statement of Activities	15
Governmental Fund Financial Statements:	
C-1 Balance Sheet	16
C-2 Reconciliation for C-1	17
C-3 Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balance	18
C-4 Reconciliation for C-3	19
Proprietary Fund Financial Statements:	
D-1 Statement of Net Position	20
D-2 Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position	21
D-3 Statement of Cash Flows	22
Fiduciary Fund Financial Statements:	
E-1 Statement of Fiduciary Net Position	23
E-2 Statement of Changes in Fiduciary Net Position	24
Notes to the Financial Statements	25-46
<b><u>Required Supplementary Information</u></b>	
G-1 Budgetary Comparison Schedule - General Fund	47
G-2 Schedule of the District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (TRS)	48
G-3 Schedule of District Contributions to TRS	49
Note to Required Supplementary Information	50
<b><u>Combining and Other Schedules</u></b>	
Nonmajor Governmental Funds:	
H-1 Combining Balance Sheet	51-52
H-2 Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenditures, and Changes in Fund Balances	53-54
Private Purpose Trust Funds:	
H-10 Combining Statement of Net Position	55-56
H-11 Combining Statement of Revenues, Expenses, and Changes in Fund Net Position	57-58
<b><u>Required TEA Schedules</u></b>	
J-1 Schedule of Delinquent Taxes	59-60
J-2 Budgetary Comparison Schedule - Child Nutrition Fund	61
<b><u>Reports on Compliance, Internal Control, and Federal Awards</u></b>	
Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and Compliance Based on an audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance with <i>Government Auditing Standards</i>	62-63
Schedule of Findings and Questioned Costs	64
Schedule of Status of Prior Findings	65
Corrective Action Plan	66
L-1 Schools First Questionnaire	67

CERTIFICATE OF BOARD

Saint Jo Independent School District  
Name of School District  
Number

Montague  
County

169911  
Co.-Dist.

We, the undersigned, certify that the attached annual financial reports of the above-named school district were reviewed and (check one)  X  approved \_\_\_\_\_ disapproved for the year ended August 31, 2017 at a meeting of the Board of Trustees of such school district on the 13th of December, 2017.

Rebecca Harris  
Signature of Board Secretary

Leaton Phillips  
Signature of Board President

If the Board of Trustees disapproved of the auditors' report, the reason(s) for disapproving it is(are):  
(attach list as necessary)



# FREEMON, SHAPARD & STORY

*Certified Public Accountants*

## **Unmodified Opinions on Basic Financial Statements Accompanied by Required Supplementary Information and Other Information**

### Independent Auditor's Report

Saint Jo Independent School District  
Drawer L  
Saint Jo, Texas 76265

Members of the Board:

### **Report on the Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the Saint Jo Independent School District as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise the Saint Jo Independent School District's basic financial statements as listed in the table of contents.

#### ***Management's Responsibility for the Financial Statements***

Management is responsible for the preparation and fair presentation of these financial statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America; this includes the design, implementation, and maintenance of internal control relevant to the preparation and fair presentation of financial statements that are free from material misstatement, whether due to fraud or error.

#### ***Auditor's Responsibility***

Our responsibility is to express opinions on these financial statements based on our audit. We conducted our audit in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards*, issued by the Comptroller General of the United States. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free from material misstatement.

An audit involves performing procedures to obtain audit evidence about the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The procedures selected depend on the auditor's judgment, including the assessment of the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to fraud or error. In making those risk assessments, the auditor considers internal control relevant to the entity's preparation and fair presentation of the financial statements in order to design audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes evaluating the appropriateness of accounting policies used and the reasonableness of significant accounting estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements.

We believe that the audit evidence we have obtained is sufficient and appropriate to provide a basis for our audit opinions.

### ***Opinions***

In our opinion, the financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the respective financial position of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of the Saint Jo Independent School District as of August 31, 2017, and the respective changes in financial position and, where applicable, cash flows thereof for the year then ended in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

### ***Other Matters***

#### ***Required Supplementary Information***

Accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America require that the management's discussion and analysis, budgetary comparison information and schedules of TRS net pension liability and District's TRS contributions on pages 5 through 13 and 47 through 50 be presented to supplement the basic financial statements. Such information, although not a part of the basic financial statements, is required by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board who considers it to be an essential part of financial reporting for placing the basic financial statements in an appropriate operational, economic, or historical context. We have applied certain limited procedures to the required supplementary information in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America, which consisted of inquiries of management about the methods of preparing the information and comparing the information for consistency with management's responses to our inquiries, the basic financial statements, and other knowledge we obtained during our audit of the basic financial statements. We do not express an opinion or provide any assurance on the information because the limited procedures do not provide us with sufficient evidence to express an opinion or provide any assurance.

#### ***Other Information***

Our audit was conducted for the purpose of forming opinions on the financial statements that collectively comprise the Saint Jo Independent School District's basic financial statements. The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the Texas Education Agency required schedules are presented for purposes of additional analysis and are not a required part of the basic financial statements. This information is in Exhibits identified in the Table of Contents as H-1 through H-4, and J-1 through J-2

The combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements and the Texas Education Agency required schedules are the responsibility of management and were derived from and relates directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements. Such information has been subjected to the auditing procedures applied in the audit of the basic financial statements and certain additional procedures, including comparing and reconciling such information directly to the underlying accounting and other records used to prepare the basic financial statements or to the basic financial statements themselves, and other additional procedures in accordance with auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America. In our opinion, the combining and individual nonmajor fund financial statements are fairly stated, in all material respects, in relation to the basic financial statements as a whole.

**Other Reporting Required by *Government Auditing Standards***

In accordance with *Government Auditing Standards*, we have also issued our report dated November 27, 2017 on our consideration of the Saint Jo Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and on our tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements and other matters. The purpose of that report is to describe the scope of our testing of internal control over financial reporting and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on internal control over financial reporting or on compliance. That report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering Saint Jo Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting and compliance.

Freemon, Shapard & Story

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Freeman, Shapard & Story".

Windthorst, Texas

November 27, 2017

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

In this section of the Annual Financial and Compliance Report, we, the managers of Saint Jo Independent School District, discuss and analyze the District's financial performance for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017. Please read it in conjunction with the independent auditors' report on pages two through four and the District's Basic Financial Statements which follow this section.

**FINANCIAL HIGHLIGHTS**

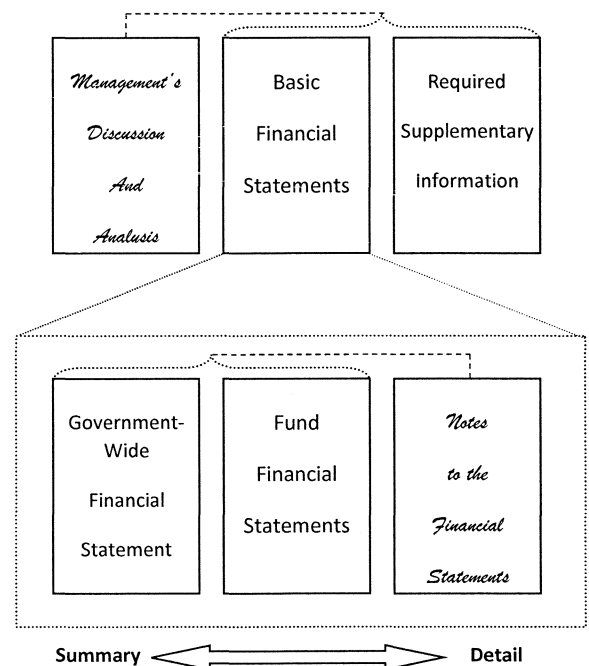
- The District's net position decreased by \$432,490 as a result of this year's operations. Of this amount, \$1,864,053 (unrestricted Net Position) may be used to meet the District's ongoing obligations of which \$599,960 has been committed for construction and equipment.
- During the year, the District had expenses that were \$432,490 more than the \$3,382,570 generated in tax and other revenues for governmental programs. This compares to last year when expenses were more than revenues by \$549,342.
- Total cost of all of the District's programs decreased \$529,997 with no new programs added this year and no old programs deleted this year.
- The General Fund ended the year with a fund balance of \$2,022,835.
- The resources available for appropriation were (\$5,471) less than budgeted for the General Fund. Expenditures were \$371,090 less than budgeted for the General fund. These two items plus the Other Financing Sources (Uses) variances of \$5,881 combine to provide a favorable variance of \$371,500 from amended budget to actual for the year.

**USING THIS ANNUAL REPORT**

This annual report consists of a series of financial statements. The government-wide financial statements include the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities (on pages 14 and 15). These provide information about the activities of the District as a whole and present a longer-term view of the District's property and debt obligations and other financial matters. They reflect the flow of total economic resources in a manner similar to the financial reports of a business enterprise.

Fund financial statements (starting on page 16) report the District's operations in more detail than the government-wide statements by providing information about the District's most significant funds. For governmental activities, these statements tell how services were financed in the short term as well as what resources remain for future spending. They reflect the flow of current financial resources, and supply the basis for tax levies and the appropriations budget. The remaining statements, fiduciary statements, provide

**Figure A-1: Required Components of the District's Annual**



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

financial information about activities for which the District acts solely as a trustee or agent for the benefit of those outside of the district.

The notes to the financial statements (starting on page 25) provide narrative explanations or additional data needed for full disclosure in the government-wide statements or the fund financial statements.

The combining statements for nonmajor funds contain even more information about the District's individual funds. These are not required by TEA. The sections labeled TEA Required Schedules and Reports on Compliance, Internal Control and Federal Awards contain data used by monitoring or regulatory agencies for assurance that the District is using funds supplied in compliance with the terms of grants.

**Figure A-2: Major Features of the District's Government-wide and Fund Financial Statements**

<b>Type of Statement</b>	<b>Government-wide</b>	<b>Government Funds</b>	<b>Proprietary Funds</b>	<b>Fiduciary Funds</b>
<i>Scope</i>	Entire District's government (except fiduciary funds)	The activities of the district that are not propriety or fiduciary	Activities the District operates similar to private businesses: self-insurance fund	Instances in which the district is the trustee or agent for someone else's resources
<i>Required Financial Statements</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Statement of Net Position</li> <li>• Statement of Activities</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Balance sheet</li> <li>• Statement of revenues, expenditures and changes in fund balances</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Statement of net position</li> <li>• Statement of revenues, expenses, and changes in net position</li> <li>• Statement of cash flows</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Statement of fiduciary assets and liabilities</li> </ul>
<i>Accounting Basis and Measurement Focus</i>	Accrual accounting and economic resources focus	Modified accrual accounting and current financial resources focus	Accrual accounting and current financial resources focus	Modified accrual accounting and current financial resources focus
<i>Type of Asset/Liability Information</i>	All assets and liabilities, both financial and capital, short-term and long-term	Only assets expected to be used up and liabilities that come due during the year or soon thereafter; no capital assets included	All assets and liabilities, both financial and capital, and short-term and long-term	Only assets expected to be used up and liabilities that come due during the year or soon thereafter; no capital assets included
<i>Type of Inflow/Outflow Information</i>	All revenue and expenses during year, regardless of when cash is received or paid	Revenues for which cash is received during or soon after year end, expenditures when goods or services have been received and payment is due during the year or soon thereafter	All revenues and expenses during the year, regardless of when cash is received or paid	Agency funds do not report revenue and expenditures

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

**Reporting the District as a Whole**

*The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities*

The analysis of the District's overall financial condition and operations begins on page 14. Its primary purpose is to show whether the District is better off or worse off as a result of the year's activities. The Statement of Net Position includes all the District's assets and liabilities at the end of the year while the Statement of Activities includes all the revenues and expenses generated by the District's operations during the year. These apply the accrual basis of accounting which is the basis used by private sector companies.

All of the current year's revenues and expenses are taken into account regardless of when cash is received or paid. The District's revenues are divided into those provided by outside parties who share the costs of some programs, such as tuition received from students from outside the district and grants provided by the U.S. Department of Education to assist children with disabilities from disadvantaged backgrounds (program revenues), and revenues provided by the taxpayers or by TEA in equalization funding processes (general revenues). All the District's assets are reported whether they serve the current year or future years. Liabilities are considered regardless of whether they must be paid in the current or future years.

These two statements report the District's net position and changes in them. The District's net position (the difference between assets and liabilities) provides one measure of the District's financial health, or financial position. Over time, increases or decreases in the District's net position is one indicator of whether its financial health is improving or deteriorating. To fully assess the overall health of the District, however, you should consider nonfinancial factors as well, such as changes in the District's average daily attendance or its property tax base and the condition of the District's facilities.

In the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities, we have the following kind of activity:

- Governmental activities—Most of the District's basic services are reported here, including the instruction, counseling, co-curricular activities, food services, transportation, maintenance, community services, and general administration. Property taxes, tuition, fees, and state and federal grants finance most of these activities.

**Reporting the District's Most Significant Funds**

*Fund Financial Statements*

The fund financial statements begin on page 16 and provide detailed information about the most significant funds—not the District as a whole. Laws and contracts require the District to establish some funds, such as grants received under the ESEA Title I-Part A Improving Basic Education from the U.S. Department of Education. The District's administration establishes many other funds to help it control and manage money for particular purposes (like campus activities). The District's has two kinds of funds—governmental and proprietary—that use different accounting approaches.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

· Governmental funds—Most of the District's basic services are reported in governmental funds. These use modified accrual accounting (a method that measures the receipt and disbursement of cash and all other financial assets that can be readily converted to cash) and report balances that are available for future spending. The governmental fund statements provide a detailed short-term view of the District's general operations and the basic services it provides. We describe the differences between governmental activities (reported in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities) and governmental funds in reconciliation schedules following each of the fund financial statements.

· Proprietary funds—The District reports the activities for which it charges users (whether outside customers or other units of the District) in proprietary funds using the same accounting methods employed in the Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities. The internal service funds (the other category of proprietary funds) report activities that provide supplies and services for the District's other programs and activities—such as the District's worker's compensation insurance program.

**The District as Trustee**

***Reporting the District's Fiduciary Responsibilities***

The District is the trustee, or fiduciary, for money raised by student activities and alumnae scholarship programs. All of the District's fiduciary activities are reported in separate Statements of Fiduciary Net Assets and Changes in Fiduciary Net Assets on pages 23 and 24. We exclude these resources from the District's other financial statements because the District cannot use these assets to finance its operations. The District is only responsible for ensuring that the assets reported in these funds are used for their intended purposes.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

**GOVERNMENT-WIDE FINANCIAL ANALYSIS**

Our analysis focuses on the net assets (Table I) and changes in net assets (Table II) of the District's governmental and business-type activities.

Net assets of the District's governmental activities decreased from \$5,719,559 to \$5,287,069. Unrestricted net assets – the part of net assets that can be used to finance day-to-day operations without constraints established by debt covenants, enabling legislation, or other legal requirements – was \$1,864,053 at August 31, 2017. This decrease in governmental net assets was the result of five factors. First, the District's expenditures exceeded revenues by about \$263,940. Second, the District booked vested retirement of (\$27,275). Third the District acquired capital assets in the amount of \$200,482 and recorded depreciation of \$312,225. Fourth, the District recorded adjustments of (\$47,930) to reflect the District's proportionate share of TRS pension liability. Fifth the District recorded other adjustments and internal service fund eliminations in the amount of \$9,348 and \$9,050, respectively.

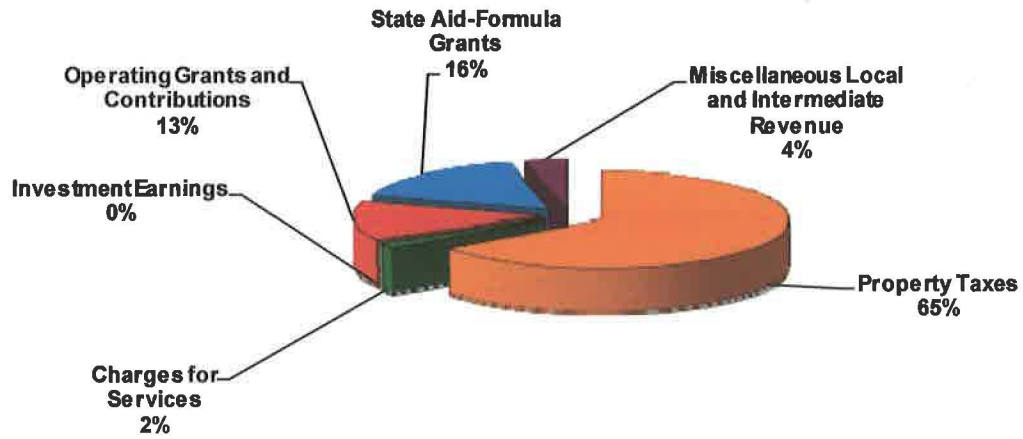
**Table I**  
**Saint Jo Independent School District**  
**NET POSITION**

	<u>Governmental Activities</u>	
	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Current and other assets	\$ 2,390,265	\$ 2,676,848
Capital assets	<u>3,411,184</u>	<u>3,522,927</u>
Total assets	<u>5,801,449</u>	<u>6,199,775</u>
Deferred Outflows of Resources	<u>268,724</u>	<u>287,791</u>
Long-term liabilities	566,013	503,471
Other liabilities	<u>186,037</u>	<u>227,079</u>
Total liabilities	<u>752,050</u>	<u>730,550</u>
Deferred Inflows of Resources	<u>31,054</u>	<u>37,458</u>
Net Position:		
Invested in capital assets, net of related debt	3,411,184	3,522,927
Restricted	11,832	14,521
Unrestricted	<u>1,864,053</u>	<u>2,182,110</u>
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 5,287,069</u>	<u>\$ 5,719,558</u>

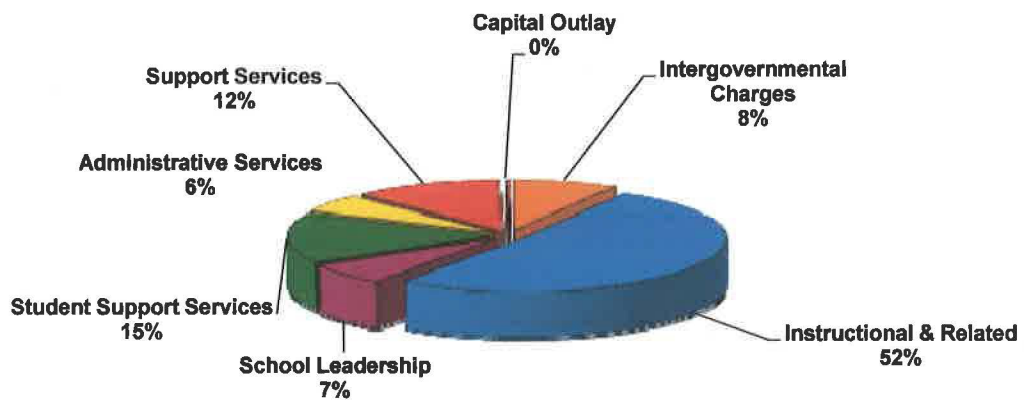


SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

Sources of Revenue for Fiscal Year 2017



Functional Expenses for Fiscal Year 2017



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

**Table II**  
**Saint Jo Independent School District**  
**CHANGES IN NET POSITION**

	Governmental Activities	
	2017	2016
Revenues:		
Program Revenues:		
Charges for Services	\$ 56,562	\$ 95,768
Operating Grants and Contributions	433,075	498,531
General Revenues:		
Maintenance and Operations Taxes	2,199,469	2,852,920
Debt Service Taxes	1,190	91,162
State Aid, Grants, and Contributions not restricted to specific Functions	559,179	201,634
Investment Earnings	10,518	5,794
Miscellaneous and Insurance Proceeds	122,577	49,906
Total Revenue and Special Items	3,382,570	3,795,715
Expenses:		
Instruction	1,915,665	1,896,535
Instructional Resources and Media Services	36,292	35,698
Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	5,746	4,383
Instructional Leadership	5,314	3,986
School leadership	248,227	237,210
Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	53,565	56,585
Health Services	6,338	4,277
Student (Pupil) Transportation	116,985	118,047
Food Services	160,335	159,594
Extracurricular activities	250,973	263,719
General administration	232,886	293,039
Facilities Maintenance and Security	408,226	443,884
Security and Monitoring Services	23,062	28,068
Data Processing Services	23,347	24,531
Debt Service- Interest on Long Term Debt	-	4,800
Debt Service-Bond Issuance Cost and Fees	-	20
Capital Outlay	9,500	-
Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	234,899	668,334
Payments related to Shared Service Arrangements	43,838	50,189
Other Intergovernmental Charges	39,862	52,158
Total Expenses	3,815,060	4,345,057
Increase in Net Position	( 432,490)	( 549,342)
Net Position at –Beginning	5,719,559	6,268,901
Net Position at-Ending	\$5,287,069	\$5,719,559

The District's total revenues decreased 10.89 percent (\$413,145), a decrease from \$3,795,715 last year to \$3,382,570 in the current year. The total cost of all programs and services was \$529,997 less than last year, a decrease of 12.20% from \$4,345,057 last year to \$3,815,060 in the current year. The main decrease in revenue results from \$653,451 in decreased property tax collections. Property tax rates decreased slightly in 2016-2017 due to no I&S tax assessed and tax values decreased \$51,579,047. Taxes assessed decreased \$699,997 from the prior year.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

The cost of all governmental activities this year was \$3,815,060 compared to \$4,345,057 last year. As shown in the Statement of Activities on page 15, the amount that our taxpayers ultimately financed for these activities through District taxes was \$2,200,659 because some of the costs were paid by those who directly benefited from the programs \$56,562 or by other governments and organizations that subsidized certain programs with grants, foundation revenues and contributions of \$992,254.

THE DISTRICT'S FUNDS

As the District completed the year, its governmental funds (as presented in the balance sheet on page 16) reported a combined fund balance of \$2,034,667, which is less than last year's total of \$2,298,607. Included in this year's total change in fund balance is a net decrease of \$263,940, due primarily to the completion of the new Agricultural Barn and repairs to the concession stand and gymnasium dome. The primary reasons for the General Fund's gain mirror the governmental activities analysis highlighted on page 18.

Other changes in fund balances should also be noted. The District purchased \$200,482 in other capital outlay in the current year. Although these and other capital expenditures reduce available fund balances, they create new assets for the District as reported in the Statement of Net Position and as discussed in Note IV-F to the financial statements.

Over the course of the year, the Board of Trustees revised the District's budget. This budget amendment was a result of two categories. The first category includes amendments and supplemental appropriations that were approved shortly after the beginning of the year and reflect the actual beginning balances (versus the amounts we estimated in August 2016). The second category involves amendments moving funds from programs that did not need all the resources originally appropriated to them to programs with resource needs.

The District's General Fund balance of \$2,022,835 reported on page 16 differs from the General Fund's budgetary fund balance of \$1,651,334 reported in the budgetary comparison schedule on page 47. This is principally due to cost reductions.

CAPITAL ASSET

At the end of 2017 the District had \$8,441,921 invested in a broad range of capital assets, including facilities and equipment for instruction, transportation, athletics, administration, and maintenance. This amount represents a net increase of \$200,482, or 2.4 percent, more than last year's total of \$8,341,439. This year's major additions included:

Ag Barn completion	\$ 12,043
Security camera at Ag Barn	5,848
Concession stand refurbishment	52,265
Ag Facility cattle pens and pig pens	38,196
Baseball Outfield fence	9,900
Activepanel 86" with Vesa Mount & cable pack	8,939
Pipe Bender	7,895
HVAC System for Elementary 311	5,244
CIP-Dome Roof repairs and gutters and downspouts	<u>60,152</u>
Totaling	<u>\$ 200,482</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
MANAGEMENT DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

Saint Jo Independent School District  
Capital Assets, Net of Depreciation

	Governmental Activities	
	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>
Land	\$ 198,477	\$ 198,477
Buildings	2,795,672	2,880,009
Furniture and Equipment	356,883	444,441
Construction in Progress	<u>60,152</u>	<u>-</u>
Total Capital Assets, net of Depreciation	<u>\$ 3,411,184</u>	<u>\$ 3,522,927</u>

The District's has committed funds for capital projects in the future for additional expenditures of \$98,270 for future construction of facilities. We also have designated \$501,690 for vehicles, buses and technology equipment. We have no plans to issue additional debt to finance these projects. More detailed information about the District's capital assets is presented in Note IV-F to the financial statements.

**ECONOMIC FACTORS AND NEXT YEAR'S BUDGETS AND RATES**

The District's elected and appointed officials considered many factors when setting the fiscal-year 2017 budget and tax rates. One of those factors is the economy. The District's refined average daily attendance decreased from 343 to 250 students from 1999 to 2017 (up 21 students from 229 in 2016). These indicators were taken into account when adopting the General Fund budget for 2017-2018. Amounts available for appropriation in the General Fund budget are \$3,105,416, a slight (\$7,229) decrease over the actual 2016-2017 revenues of \$3,112,645. The District will use its revenues to finance programs we currently offer. Budgeted expenditures and transfers out are expected to decrease 7.29 percent (\$245,811) to \$3,128,085 from actual expenses of \$3,373,896 in 2016-2017. The District has added no major new programs or initiatives to the 2017-2018 budgets. If these estimates are realized, the District's budgetary General Fund balance is expected to remain virtually the same by the close of 2017-2018.

**CONTACTING THE DISTRICT'S FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

This financial report is designed to provide our citizens, taxpayers, customers, and creditors with a general overview of the District's finances and to show the District's accountability for the money it receives. If you have questions about this report or need additional financial information, contact the District's business office, at Saint Jo Independent School District, Drawer L, Saint Jo, Texas 76265.

# **BASIC FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT A-1

Data Control Codes	Primary Government
	Governmental Activities
<b>ASSETS</b>	
1110 Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,733,085
1220 Property Taxes Receivable (Delinquent)	190,046
1230 Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes	(47,158)
1240 Due from Other Governments	501,888
1410 Prepayments	12,404
Capital Assets:	
1510 Land	198,477
1520 Buildings, Net	2,795,672
1530 Furniture and Equipment, Net	356,883
1580 Construction in Progress	60,152
1000 Total Assets	5,801,449
<b>DEFERRED OUTFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
1705 Deferred Outflow Related to TRS	268,724
1700 Total Deferred Outflows of Resources	268,724
<b>LIABILITIES</b>	
2110 Accounts Payable	45,104
2160 Accrued Wages Payable	137,950
2200 Accrued Expenses	2,983
Noncurrent Liabilities	
2502 Due in More Than One Year	27,275
2540 Net Pension Liability (District's Share)	538,738
2000 Total Liabilities	752,050
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>	
2601 Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	-
2605 Deferred Inflow Related to TRS	31,054
2600 Total Deferred Inflows of Resources	31,054
<b>NET POSITION</b>	
3200 Net Investment in Capital Assets	3,411,184
3870 Restricted for Campus Activities	11,832
3900 Unrestricted	1,864,053
3000 Total Net Position	\$ 5,287,069

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT B-1

Data Control Codes	1	Program Revenues		6
Codes	Expenses	3 Charges for Services	4 Operating Grants and Contributions	6 Primary Gov. Governmental Activities
<b>Primary Government:</b>				
<b>GOVERNMENTAL ACTIVITIES:</b>				
11 Instruction	\$ 1,915,665	\$ 19,552	\$ 298,916	\$ (1,597,197)
12 Instructional Resources and Media Services	36,292	-	2,160	(34,132)
13 Curriculum and Staff Development	5,746	-	412	(5,334)
21 Instructional Leadership	5,314	-	-	(5,314)
23 School Leadership	248,227	-	14,919	(233,308)
31 Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	53,565	-	3,341	(50,224)
33 Health Services	6,338	-	-	(6,338)
34 Student (Pupil) Transportation	116,985	-	2,980	(114,005)
35 Food Services	160,335	22,788	88,755	(48,792)
36 Extracurricular Activities	250,973	10,944	5,481	(234,548)
41 General Administration	232,886	3,278	6,097	(223,511)
51 Facilities Maintenance and Operations	408,226	-	9,829	(398,397)
52 Security and Monitoring Services	23,062	-	185	(22,877)
53 Data Processing Services	23,347	-	-	(23,347)
81 Capital Outlay	9,500	-	-	(9,500)
91 Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	234,899	-	-	(234,899)
93 Payments related to Shared Services Arrangements	43,838	-	-	(43,838)
99 Other Intergovernmental Charges	39,862	-	-	(39,862)
[TP] TOTAL PRIMARY GOVERNMENT:	<u>\$ 3,815,060</u>	<u>\$ 56,562</u>	<u>\$ 433,075</u>	<u>(3,325,423)</u>

Data Control Codes	General Revenues:	
	Taxes:	
MT	Property Taxes, Levied for General Purposes	2,199,469
DT	Property Taxes, Levied for Debt Service	1,190
SF	State Aid - Formula Grants	559,179
IE	Investment Earnings	10,518
MI	Miscellaneous Local and Intermediate Revenue	122,577
TR	Total General Revenues	<u>2,892,933</u>
CN	Change in Net Position	(432,490)
NB	Net Position - Beginning	<u>5,719,559</u>
NE	Net Position--Ending	<u>\$ 5,287,069</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
BALANCE SHEET  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds	
<b>ASSETS</b>				
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 1,682,954	\$ 12,926	\$ 1,695,880
1220	Property Taxes - Delinquent	190,046	-	190,046
1230	Allowance for Uncollectible Taxes (Credit)	(47,158)	-	(47,158)
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	473,716	28,172	501,888
1260	Due from Other Funds	21,254	-	21,254
1410	Prepayments	12,404	-	12,404
1000	<b>Total Assets</b>	<b>\$ 2,333,216</b>	<b>\$ 41,098</b>	<b>\$ 2,374,314</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>				
2110	Accounts Payable	\$ 30,497	\$ 4,075	\$ 34,572
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	134,261	3,689	137,950
2170	Due to Other Funds	-	21,254	21,254
2200	Accrued Expenditures	2,735	248	2,983
2000	<b>Total Liabilities</b>	<b>167,493</b>	<b>29,266</b>	<b>196,759</b>
<b>DEFERRED INFLOWS OF RESOURCES</b>				
2601	Unavailable Revenue - Property Taxes	142,888	-	142,888
2600	<b>Total Deferred Inflows of Resources</b>	<b>142,888</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>142,888</b>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>				
Committed Fund Balance:				
3510	Construction	98,270	-	98,270
3530	Capital Expenditures for Equipment	501,690	-	501,690
Assigned Fund Balance:				
3590	Other Assigned Fund Balance	-	11,832	11,832
3600	Unassigned Fund Balance	1,422,875	-	1,422,875
3000	<b>Total Fund Balances</b>	<b>2,022,835</b>	<b>11,832</b>	<b>2,034,667</b>
4000	<b>Total Liabilities, Deferred Inflows &amp; Fund Balances</b>	<b>\$ 2,333,216</b>	<b>\$ 41,098</b>	<b>\$ 2,374,314</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS BALANCE SHEET TO THE  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
AUGUST 31, 2017

<b>Total Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	2,034,667
The District uses internal service funds to charge the costs of certain activities, such as self-insurance, to appropriate functions in other funds. The assets and liabilities of the internal service funds are included in governmental activities in the statement of net position. The net effect of this consolidation is to increase (decrease) net position.		26,673
Capital assets used in governmental activities are not financial resources and therefore are not reported in governmental funds. At the beginning of the year, the cost of these assets was \$8,241,439 and the accumulated depreciation was \$4,718,512. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period, and, therefore are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The net effect of including the beginning balances for capital assets (net of depreciation) is to increase (decrease) net position.		3,522,927
Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of including the 2017 capital outlays (\$200,482) and vested retirement (\$27,275) is to increase (decrease) net position.		173,207
Included in the items related to debt is the recognition of the District's proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68. The net position related to TRS included a deferred resource outflow in the amount of \$268,724, a deferred resource inflow in the amount of \$31,054 and a net pension liability in the amount of \$538,738. This result in a decrease in net position.		(301,068)
The 2017 depreciation expense increases accumulated depreciation. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(312,225)
Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, eliminating interfund transactions, reclassifying the proceeds of bond sales as an increase in bonds payable, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.		142,888
<b>Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>5,287,069</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	10 General Fund	Other Funds	Total Governmental Funds	
REVENUES:				
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 2,352,393	\$ 28,575	\$ 2,380,968
5800	State Program Revenues	688,443	20,471	708,914
5900	Federal Program Revenues	71,809	189,285	261,094
5020	Total Revenues	<u>3,112,645</u>	<u>238,331</u>	<u>3,350,976</u>
EXPENDITURES:				
Current:				
0011	Instruction	1,610,867	132,847	1,743,714
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	33,907	-	33,907
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	5,387	350	5,737
0021	Instructional Leadership	5,314	-	5,314
0023	School Leadership	234,371	-	234,371
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	51,794	-	51,794
0033	Health Services	6,338	-	6,338
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	62,299	-	62,299
0035	Food Services	3,173	133,643	136,816
0036	Extracurricular Activities	183,380	-	183,380
0041	General Administration	224,365	-	224,365
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	447,874	-	447,874
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	9,309	-	9,309
0053	Data Processing Services	23,347	-	23,347
Capital Outlay:				
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	127,752	-	127,752
Intergovernmental:				
0091	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	234,899	-	234,899
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	43,838	-	43,838
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	39,862	-	39,862
6030	Total Expenditures	<u>3,348,076</u>	<u>266,840</u>	<u>3,614,916</u>
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	<u>(235,431)</u>	<u>(28,509)</u>	<u>(263,940)</u>
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):				
7915	Transfers In	-	25,820	25,820
8911	Transfers Out (Use)	(25,820)	-	(25,820)
7080	Total Other Financing Sources (Uses)	<u>(25,820)</u>	<u>25,820</u>	<u>-</u>
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	(261,251)	(2,689)	(263,940)
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>2,284,086</u>	<u>14,521</u>	<u>2,298,607</u>
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 2,022,835</u>	<u>\$ 11,832</u>	<u>\$ 2,034,667</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 RECONCILIATION OF THE GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES,  
 AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES TO THE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

<b>Total Net Change in Fund Balances - Governmental Funds</b>	\$	(263,940)
The District uses internal service funds to charge the costs of certain activities, such as self-insurance and printing, to appropriate functions in other funds. The net income (loss) of internal service funds are reported with governmental activities. The net effect of this consolidation is to increase (decrease) net position.		9,050
Current year capital outlays and long-term debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but they should be shown as increases in capital assets and reductions in long-term debt in the government-wide financial statements. The net effect of removing the 2017 capital outlays (\$200,482) and vested retirement (\$27,275) is to increase (decrease) net position.		173,207
Depreciation is not recognized as an expense in governmental funds since it does not require the use of current financial resources. The net effect of the current year's depreciation is to decrease net position.		(312,225)
Various other reclassifications and eliminations are necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. These include recognizing unavailable revenue from property taxes as revenue, adjusting current year revenue to show the revenue earned from the current year's tax levy, eliminating interfund transactions, reclassifying the proceeds of bond sales, and recognizing the liabilities associated with maturing long-term debt and interest. The net effect of these reclassifications and recognitions is to increase (decrease) net position.		9,348
GASB 68 required that certain expenditures be de-expended and recorded as deferred resource outflows. These contributions made after the measurement date of the plan caused the change in the ending net position to increase in the amount of \$46,228. Contributions made before the measurement date and during the previous fiscal year were also expended and recorded as a reduction in net pension liability for the District. This caused a decrease in the change in net position totaling \$44,017. Finally the proportionate share of the TRS pension expense on the plan as a whole had to be recorded. The net pension decreased the change in net position by \$50,141. The net result is to decrease the change in net position by (\$47,930).		(47,930)
<b>Change in Net Position of Governmental Activities</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>(432,490)</b>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
<b>ASSETS</b>	
Current Assets:	
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 37,205
Total Assets	37,205
<b>LIABILITIES</b>	
Current Liabilities:	
Accounts Payable	10,532
Total Liabilities	10,532
<b>NET POSITION</b>	
Unrestricted Net Position	26,673
Total Net Position	\$ 26,673

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES, AND CHANGES IN FUND NET POSITION  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
<hr/>	
OPERATING REVENUES:	
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 13,843
Total Operating Revenues	<u>13,843</u>
OPERATING EXPENSES:	
Other Operating Costs	<u>4,793</u>
Total Operating Expenses	<u>4,793</u>
Operating Income	9,050
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>17,623</u>
Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	<u><u>\$ 26,673</u></u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF CASH FLOWS  
PROPRIETARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Governmental Activities -
	Internal Service Fund
<u>Cash Flows from Operating Activities:</u>	
Cash Received from User Charges	\$ 13,843
Cash Payments for Insurance Claims	(2,695)
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	<u>11,148</u>
Net Increase in Cash and Cash Equivalents	11,148
Cash and Cash Equivalents at Beginning of Year	<u>26,057</u>
Cash and Cash Equivalents at End of Year	<u>\$ 37,205</u>
<u>Reconciliation of Operating Income to Net Cash</u>	
<u>Provided by Operating Activities:</u>	
Operating Income:	\$ 9,050
Effect of Increases and Decreases in Current Assets and Liabilities:	
Increase (decrease) in Accounts Payable	2,098
Net Cash Provided by Operating Activities	<u>\$ 11,148</u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 STATEMENT OF FIDUCIARY NET POSITION  
 FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2017

	Private Purpose Trust Funds	Agency Fund
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 26,849	\$ 11,966
Restricted Assets	136,064	-
Total Assets	<u>162,913</u>	<u>\$ 11,966</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Due to Student Groups	-	\$ 11,966
Total Liabilities	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ 11,966</u>
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
Restricted for Scholarships	<u>162,913</u>	
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 162,913</u>	

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN FIDUCIARY FUND NET POSITION  
FIDUCIARY FUNDS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	Private Purpose Trust Funds
ADDITIONS:	
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 6,454
Total Additions	<u>6,454</u>
DEDUCTIONS:	
Other Operating Costs	<u>7,450</u>
Total Deductions	<u>7,450</u>
Change in Net Position	(996)
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>163,909</u>
Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	<u><u>\$ 162,913</u></u>

The notes to the financial statements are an integral part of this statement.



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**I. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

Saint Jo Independent School District (the "District") is a public educational agency operating under the applicable laws and regulations of the State of Texas. It is governed by a seven member Board of Trustees (the "Board") elected by registered voters of the District. The District prepares its basic financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) promulgated by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board (GASB) and other authoritative sources identified in **GASB Statement No. 76**, and it complies with the requirements of the appropriate version of Texas Education Agency's *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide* (the "Resource Guide") and the requirements of contracts and grants of agencies from which it receives funds.

*Pensions.* The fiduciary net position of the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS) has been determined using the flow of economic resources measurement focus and full accrual basis of accounting. This includes for purposes of measuring the net pension liability, deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions, pension expense, and information about assets, liabilities and additions to/deductions from TRS's fiduciary net position. Benefit payments (including refunds of employee contributions) are recognized when due and payable in accordance with the benefit terms. Investments are reported at fair value.

Saint Jo Independent School District applies Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") Statement No. 72, Fair Value Measurement and Application. GASB Statement No. 72 provides guidance for determining a fair value measurement for reporting purposes and applying fair value to certain investments and disclosures related to all fair value measurements. The District's investments are accounted for using the cost amortization method.

**A. REPORTING ENTITY**

The Board of Trustees (the "Board") is elected by the public and it has the authority to make decisions, appoint administrators and managers, and significantly influence operations. It also has the primary accountability for fiscal matters. Therefore, the District is a financial reporting entity as defined by the Governmental Accounting Standards Board ("GASB") in its Statement No. 14, "The Financial Reporting Entity." There are no component units included within the reporting entity.

**B. GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

The Statement of Net Position and the Statement of Activities are government-wide financial statements. They report information on all of the Saint Jo Independent School nonfiduciary activities with most of the interfund activities removed. *Governmental activities* include programs supported primarily by taxes, State foundation funds, grants and other intergovernmental revenues.

The Statement of Activities demonstrates how other people or entities that participate in programs the District operates have shared in the payment of the direct costs. The "charges for services" column includes payments made by parties that purchase, use, or directly benefit from goods or services provided by a given function or segment of the District. Examples include tuition paid by students not residing in the district, school lunch charges, etc. The "grants and contributions" column includes amounts paid by organizations outside the District to help meet the operational or capital requirements of a given function. Examples include grants under the Elementary and Secondary Education Act. If a revenue is not a program revenue, it is a general revenue used to support all of the District's functions. Taxes are always general revenues.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Interfund activities between governmental funds and between governmental funds and proprietary funds appear as due to/due froms on the Governmental Fund Balance Sheet and Proprietary Fund Statement of Net Position and as other resources and other uses on the governmental fund Statement of Revenues, Expenditures and Changes in Fund Balance and on the Proprietary Fund Statement of Revenues, Expenses and Changes in Fund Net Position. All interfund transactions between governmental funds and between governmental funds and internal service funds are eliminated on the government-wide statements. Interfund activities between governmental funds and fiduciary funds remain as due to/due froms on the government-wide Statement of Activities.

The fund financial statements provide reports on the financial condition and results of operations for three fund categories - governmental, proprietary, and fiduciary. Since the resources in the fiduciary funds cannot be used for District operations, they are not included in the government-wide statements. The District considers some governmental funds major and reports their financial condition and results of operations in a separate column.

Proprietary funds distinguish operating revenues and expenses from nonoperating items. Operating revenues result from providing goods and services in connection with a proprietary fund's principal ongoing operations; they usually come from exchange or exchange-like transactions. All other revenues are nonoperating. Operating expenses can be tied specifically to the production of the goods and services, such as materials and labor and direct overhead. Other expenses are nonoperating.

**C. MEASUREMENT FOCUS, BASIS OF ACCOUNTING, AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT PRESENTATION**

The government-wide financial statements use the economic resources measurement focus and the accrual basis of accounting, as do the proprietary fund and fiduciary fund financial statements. Revenues are recorded when earned and expenses are recorded when a liability is incurred, regardless of the timing of the related cash flows. Property taxes are recognized as revenues in the year for which they are levied. Grants and similar items are recognized as revenue as soon as all eligibility requirements imposed by the provider have been met.

Governmental fund financial statements use the current financial resources measurement focus and the modified accrual basis of accounting. With this measurement focus, only current assets, current liabilities and fund balances are included on the balance sheet. Operating statements of these funds present net increases and decreases in current assets (i.e., revenues and other financing sources and expenditures and other financing uses).

The modified accrual basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they become both measurable and available, and it recognizes expenditures in the accounting period in which the fund liability is incurred, if measurable, except for unmatured interest and principal on long-term debt, which is recognized when due. The expenditures related to certain compensated absences and claims and judgments are recognized when the obligations are expected to be liquidated with expendable available financial resources. The District considers all revenues available if they are collectible within 60 days after year end.

Revenues from local sources consist primarily of property taxes. Property tax revenues and revenues received from the State are recognized under the "susceptible to accrual" concept, that is, when they are both measurable and available. The District considers them "available" if they will be collected within 60 days of the end of the fiscal year. Miscellaneous revenues are recorded as revenue when received in cash because they are generally not measurable until actually received. Investment earnings are recorded as earned, since they are both measurable and available.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Grant funds are considered to be earned to the extent of expenditures made under the provisions of the grant. Accordingly, when such funds are received, they are recorded as unearned revenues until related and authorized expenditures have been made. If balances have not been expended by the end of the project period, grantors sometimes require the District to refund all or part of the unused amount.

The Proprietary Fund Types and Fiduciary Funds are accounted for on a flow of economic resources measurement focus and utilize the accrual basis of accounting. This basis of accounting recognizes revenues in the accounting period in which they are earned and become measurable and expenses in the accounting period in which they are incurred and become measurable. The District applies all GASB pronouncements as well as the Financial Accounting Standards Board pronouncements issued on or before November 30, 1989, unless these pronouncements conflict or contradict GASB pronouncements. With this measurement focus, all assets and all liabilities associated with the operation of these funds are included on the fund Statement of Net Position. The fund equity is segregated into invested in capital assets net of related debt, restricted net assets, and unrestricted net assets.

Agency Funds utilize the accrual basis of accounting but do not have a measurement focus as they report only assets and liabilities.

**D. FUND ACCOUNTING**

The District reports the following major governmental funds:

1. **The General Fund** – The general fund is the District's primary operating fund. It accounts for all financial resources except those required to be accounted for in another fund.

Additionally, the District reports the following fund type(s):

Governmental Funds:

1. **Special Revenue Funds** – The District accounts for resources restricted to, or designated for, specific purposes by the District or a grantor in a special revenue fund. Most Federal and some State financial assistance is accounted for in a Special Revenue Fund, and sometimes unused balances must be returned to the grantor at the close of specified project periods.

Proprietary Funds:

2. **Internal Service Funds** – Revenues and expenses related to services provided to organizations inside the District on a cost reimbursement basis are accounted for in an internal service fund. The District's Internal Service Fund is a self-insured workers' compensation insurance fund.

Fiduciary Funds:

3. **Private Purpose Trust Funds** – The District accounts for donations for which the donor has stipulated that both the principal and the income may be used for purposes that benefit parties outside the District. The District's Private Purpose Trust Funds are donations for scholarship funds that are received by the District that are awarded to current and former students for post-secondary education purposes.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

4. **Agency Funds** – The District accounts for resources held for others in a custodial capacity in agency funds. The District's Agency Fund is used to account for activities of student groups and other organizational activities requiring clearing accounts. Financial resources for the Agency Funds are recorded as assets and liabilities: therefore, these funds do not include revenues and expenditures and have no fund equity. If any unused resources are declared surplus by the student groups, they are transferred to the General Fund with a recommendation to the Board for an appropriated utilization through a budget program.

**E. OTHER ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

1. For purposes of the statement of cash flows for proprietary funds, the District considers highly liquid investments to be cash equivalents if they have a maturity of three months or less when purchased.
2. The District reports inventories of supplies at weighted average cost including consumable maintenance, instructional, office, athletic, and transportation items. Supplies are recorded as expenditures when they are consumed. Inventories of food commodities are recorded at market values supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services. Although commodities are received at no cost, their fair market value is supplied by the Texas Department of Human Services and recorded as inventory and unearned revenue when received. When requisitioned, inventory and unearned revenue are relieved, expenditures are charged, and revenue is recognized for an equal amount. The District had no material amounts of inventory on hand at August 31, 2017.
3. In the government-wide financial statements, and proprietary fund types in the fund financial statements, long-term debt and other long-term obligations are reported as liabilities in the applicable governmental activities or proprietary fund type statement of net assets. Bond premiums and discounts are deferred and amortized over the life of the bonds using the effective interest method. Bonds payable are reported net of the applicable bond premium or discount.

In the fund financial statements, governmental fund types recognize bond premiums and discounts, as well as bond issuance costs, during the current period. The face amount of debt issued is reported as other financing sources. Premiums received on debt issuances are reported as other financing sources while discounts on debt issuances are reported as other financing uses. Issuance costs, whether or not withheld from the actual debt proceeds received, are reported as debt service expenditures.

4. It is the District's policy to permit some employees to accumulate earned but unused vacation and sick pay benefits. There is no liability for unpaid accumulated sick leave since the District does not have a policy to pay any amounts when employees separate from service with the district. An employee who retires from the District and has five years' experience with the District shall be eligible for reimbursement for unused state leave, to a maximum of 40 days, at a rate established by the Board the year of retirement. The liability for such vested retirement benefits has been recorded in the government wide financial statements.
5. Capital assets, which include land, buildings, furniture and equipment are reported in the applicable governmental activities columns in the government-wide financial statements. Capital assets are defined by the District as assets with an initial, individual cost of more than \$5,000 and an estimated useful life in excess of one year. Such assets are recorded at historical cost or estimated historical cost if purchased or constructed. Donated capital assets are recorded at estimated fair market value at the date of donation.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The costs of normal maintenance and repairs that do not add to the value of the asset or materially extend assets lives are not capitalized. Major outlays for capital assets and improvements are capitalized as projects are constructed.

Buildings, furniture and equipment of the District are depreciated using the straight line method over the following estimated useful lives:

<u>Assets</u>	<u>Years</u>
Building and Improvements	10-30
Vehicles	5-10
Equipment	5-20

6. Since Internal Service Funds support the operations of governmental funds, they are consolidated with the governmental funds in the government-wide financial statements. The expenditures of governmental funds that create the revenues of internal service funds are eliminated to avoid "grossing up" the revenues and expenses of the District as a whole.
  
7. The District is exposed to various risks of loss related to torts, theft, damage or destruction of assets, errors and omissions, injuries to employees and natural disasters. During fiscal year 2017, the District participated in the TASB Risk Management Fund's Property Fund (the Fund) with coverage in office equipment floater, property, unemployment compensation and liability insurance. The Fund was created and is operated under the provisions of the Interlocal Cooperation Act, Chapter 791 of the Texas Government Code. All members participating in the Fund execute Interlocal Agreements that define the responsibilities of the parties. The Fund purchases stop-loss coverage for protection against catastrophic and larger than anticipated claims. The Fund uses the services of an independent actuary to determine the adequacy of reserves and fully funds those reserves. For the year ended August 31, 2017, the Fund anticipates Saint Jo Independent School District has no additional liability beyond their contractual obligations for payment of contributions.

The District also participates in a shared risk workmen's compensation pool which is authorized by Chapter 504, Texas Labor Code. The District is liable for its own workmen's compensation claims up to a certain level. If claims exceed this level, the remaining liability is shared by the other members of the pool. The District is also liable for its own shared percentage of others districts that have exceeded their liability limit. The pool as a whole is also insured with a stop-loss policy should it incur claims above a certain level.

TASB Risk Management Fund engages the services of an independent auditor to conduct a financial audit after the close of each plan year on August 31. The audit is accepted by the Fund's Board of Trustees in February of the following year. The Fund's audited financial statements as of August 31, 2016 are available at the TASB office and have been filed with the Texas Department of Insurance in Austin.

8. The Data Control Codes refer to the account code structure prescribed by TEA in the *Financial Accountability System Resource Guide*. Texas Education Agency requires school districts to display these codes in the financial statements filed with the Agency in order to insure accuracy in building a Statewide data base for policy development and funding plans.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

9. Government-Wide Net Position

Net investment in capital assets- the components of net position that represents capital assets net of related debt is \$3,411,184.

Restricted for Campus Activities- the component of net position that reports the difference between assets and liabilities of the Campus Fund at August 31, that consists of assets with constraints place on their use by external parties is \$11,832.

Unrestricted- the difference between the assets and liabilities that are not reported in net position invested in capital assets, net position restricted for debt service, net position restricted for Federal and State Programs, net position restricted for Capital Projects and net position restricted for Campus Activities is \$1,864,053.

10. Fund Balances- Governmental Funds

According to the District’s fund balance policy, fund balance is comprised of the following components:

Nonspendable fund balance – assets that will never convert to cash, such as inventory and prepaid items or are legally required to remain intact such as notes receivable.

Restricted fund balance – the portion of fund balance that reflects resources that are subject to externally enforceable legal restrictions imposed by parties outside the District.

Committed fund balance – the portion of fund balance that reflects resources whose use is limited based upon resolutions by the District’s Board of Trustees. Committed fund balance amounts differ from restricted balances in that the constraints on their use do not come from outside parties, constitutional provisions or enabling legislation. At August 31, 2017, the District had committed fund balances as follows:

For construction	\$ 98,270
For equipment	<u>501,690</u>
Total fund balance commitments	<u>\$ 599,960</u>

Assigned fund balance – the portion of fund balance that reflects resources whose use is limited by its intended use. Intent may be stipulated by the Board of Trustees or by an official or body to which the Board of Trustees delegates the authority. At August 31, 2017, the District’s assigned fund balance of \$11,832 represents Campus activity funds based upon resolution of the board.

Unassigned fund balance – the portion of fund balance in excess of nonspendable, restricted, committed and assigned amounts. The District is accumulating increased amounts in unassigned fund balance to allow for expected decreases in future ADA and the related reduction in State Foundation and Federal Revenues, as well as a decline in recent property tax values in the area. Additionally, the District shall strive to maintain a yearly fund balance in the general operating fund of at least three times the District’s average monthly operating expenditures.

11. When the District incurs an expense for which it may use either restricted or unrestricted assets, it uses the restricted assets first whenever they will have to be returned if they are not used. When an expenditure is incurred for which committed, assigned, or unassigned fund balances are available, the District considers amounts to have been spent first out of committed funds, then assigned funds, and finally unassigned funds

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

12. In addition to assets, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred outflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred outflows of resources*, represents a consumption of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will *not* be recognized as an outflow of resources (expense/expenditure) until then. The District's deferred outflows of resources consist of amounts paid to TRS pension retirement system and not yet expensed by measurement date of August 31, 2016.
13. In addition to liabilities, the statement of financial position will sometimes report a separate section for deferred inflows of resources. This separate financial statement element, *deferred inflows of resources*, represents an acquisition of net position that applies to a future period(s) and so will *not* be recognized as an inflow of resources (revenue) until that time. The District has one type of item which arises only under a modified accrual basis of accounting that qualifies for reporting in this category. Uncollected property taxes which are assumed collectible are reported in this category on the balance sheet for governmental funds. They are not reported in this category on the government wide statement of net position. The District's deferred outflows of resources consist of amounts paid to TRS pension retirement system and not yet expensed by measurement date of August 31, 2016.

**II. RECONCILIATION OF GOVERNMENT-WIDE AND FUND FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

**A. EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENTAL FUND BALANCE SHEET AND THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE STATEMENT OF NET POSITION**

Exhibit C-2 provides the reconciliation between the fund balance for total governmental funds on the governmental fund balance sheet and the net position for governmental activities as reported in the government-wide statement of net position. One element of that reconciliation explains that capital assets are not financial resources and are therefore not reported in governmental funds. In addition, long-term liabilities, including bonds payable, are not due and payable in the current period and are not reported as liabilities in the funds. The details of capital assets and long-term debt at the beginning of the year were as follows:

<u>Capital Assets</u> <u>at the Beginning of the year</u>	<u>Historic Cost</u>	<u>Accumulated</u> <u>Depreciation</u>	<u>Net Value at the</u> <u>Beginning of the</u> <u>Year</u>	<u>Change in Net</u> <u>Assets</u>
Land	\$ 198,477	\$ -	\$ 198,477	
Buildings & Improvemnts	6,863,169	3,983,160	2,880,009	
Furniture & Equipment	<u>1,179,793</u>	<u>735,352</u>	<u>444,441</u>	
Change in Net Position				<u>\$ 3,522,927</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**B. EXPLANATION OF CERTAIN DIFFERENCES BETWEEN THE GOVERNMENTAL FUND STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCES AND THE GOVERNMENT-WIDE STATEMENT OF ACTIVITIES**

Exhibit C-4 provides a reconciliation between the net changes in fund balance as shown on the governmental fund statement of revenues, expenditures, and changes in fund balances and the changes in net position of governmental activities as reported on the government-wide statement of activities. One element of that reconciliation explains that current year capital outlays and debt principal payments are expenditures in the fund financial statements, but should be shown as increases in capital assets and decreases in long-term debt in the government-wide statements. This adjustment affects both the net asset balance and the change in net position. The details of this adjustment are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Changes in Net Position</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
<u>Current Year Capital Outlay</u>			
Buildings & Improvements	\$ 118,252	\$ 118,252	\$ 118,252
Furniture & Equipment	22,078	22,078	22,078
Construction in Progress	<u>60,152</u>	<u>60,152</u>	<u>60,152</u>
Total Capital Outlay	<u>200,482</u>	<u>200,482</u>	<u>200,482</u>
 <u>Debt Activity</u>			
Vested Retirement Benefit	<u>27,275</u>	<u>27,275</u>	<u>27,275</u>
Total Debt Activity	<u>27,275</u>	<u>27,275</u>	<u>27,275</u>
Total Adjustment to Net Position		<u>\$ 173,207</u>	<u>\$ 173,207</u>

Another element of the reconciliation on Exhibit C-4 is described as various other reclassifications and eliminations necessary to convert from the modified accrual basis of accounting to accrual basis of accounting. This adjustment is the result of several items. The details for this element are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Change in Net Position</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
<u>Adjustments to Revenue and Deferred Revenue</u>			
Taxes Collected from Prior Year Levies	(\$ 32,319)	(\$32,319)	\$ -
Uncollected taxes(assumed collectible) from Current Year Levy	41,667	41,667	41,667
Uncollected Taxes (assumed collectible) from Prior Year Levy	<u>101,221</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>101,221</u>
Total		<u>\$ 9,348</u>	<u>\$ 142,888</u>

Another element of the reconciliation on Exhibit C-4 relates to the District's recognition of its proportionate share of the net pension liability required by GASB 68. The details of this adjustment are as follows:

	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Adjustments to Change in Net Position</u>	<u>Adjustments to Net Position</u>
<u>Implementation of GASB 68</u>			
Net Pension Liability at Beginning of Year	(\$ 253,138)	\$ -	(\$ 253,138)
District's Proportionate Share of pension expense	( 50,141)	( 50,141)	( 50,141)
Contributions made after measurement date of 8/31/16	46,228	46,228	46,228
Contributions made after measurement date but during 2017 FY and recorded as reduction in net pension liability	<u>( 44,017)</u>	<u>( 44,017)</u>	<u>( 44,017)</u>
Total Adjustment to Net Position		<u>(\$ 47,930)</u>	<u>(\$ 301,068)</u>



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**III. STEWARDSHIP, COMPLIANCE, AND ACCOUNTABILITY**

**A. BUDGETARY DATA**

The Board of Trustees adopts an "appropriated budget" for the General Fund and the Food Service Fund which is included in the Special Revenue Funds. The District is required to present the adopted and final amended budgeted revenues and expenditures for each of these funds. The District compares the final amended budget to actual revenues and expenditures. The General Fund Budget report appears in Exhibit G-1 in RSI and the Food Service report is in Exhibit J-2.

The following procedures are followed in establishing the budgetary data reflected in the general-purpose financial statements:

1. Prior to August 20 the District prepares a budget for the next succeeding fiscal year beginning September 1. The operating budget includes proposed expenditures and the means of financing them.
2. A meeting of the Board is then called for the purpose of adopting the proposed budget. At least ten days' public notice of the meeting must be given.
3. Prior to September 1, the budget is legally enacted through passage of a resolution by the Board. Once a budget is approved, it can only be amended at the function and fund level by approval of a majority of the members of the Board. Amendments are presented to the Board at its regular meetings. Each amendment must have Board approval. As required by law, such amendments are made before the fact, are reflected in the official minutes of the Board, and are not made after fiscal year end. Because the District has a policy of careful budgetary control, several amendments were necessary during the year.
4. Each budget is controlled by the budget coordinator at the revenue and expenditure function/object level. Budgeted amounts are as amended by the Board. All budget appropriations lapse at year end.

**B. EXCESS OF EXPENDITURES OVER APPROPRIATIONS**

The District had no expenditures in excess of appropriations.

**C. DEFICIT FUND EQUITY**

The District had no fund equity deficits at year-end.

**IV. DETAILED NOTES ON ALL FUNDS AND ACCOUNT GROUPS**

**A. CASH, CASH EQUIVALENTS AND INVESTMENTS**

**Cash and Cash Equivalents**

The District's funds are required to be deposited and invested under the terms of a depository contract. The depository bank deposits for safekeeping and trust with its agent bank, approved pledged securities in an amount sufficient to protect District funds on a day-to-day basis during the period of the contract. The pledge of approved securities is waived only to the extent of the depository bank's dollar amount of Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insurance.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Cash Deposits

At August 31, 2017, the carrying amount of the District's deposits (cash, certificates of deposit, and interest-bearing savings accounts) was \$1,758,732 and the bank balance was \$1,797,407. The District's cash deposits at August 31, 2017 and during the year then ended were entirely covered by FDIC insurance or by pledged collateral held by the District's agent bank in the District's name.

In addition, the following is disclosed regarding coverage of combined balances on the date of highest deposit:

- a. Depository: First State Bank
- b. The market value of securities pledged as of the date of the highest combined balance on deposit was \$4,978,241.
- c. The highest combined balances of cash, savings, and time deposit accounts amounted to \$3,535,965 and occurred during the month of February 2017.
- d. Total amount of FDIC coverage at the time of the highest combined balance was \$250,000.

District Policies and Legal and Contractual Provisions Governing Deposits

Custodial Credit Risk for Deposits State law requires governmental entities to contract with financial institutions in which funds will be deposited to secure those deposits with insurance or pledged securities with a fair value equaling or exceeding the amount on deposit at the end of each business day. The pledged securities must be in the name of the governmental entity and held by the entity or its agent. Since the district complies with this law, it has no custodial credit risk for deposits.

Foreign Currency Risk: The District does not make investments that have foreign currency risk.

As of August 31, 2017, the following are the District's cash and cash equivalents with respective maturities and credit rating:

<u>Type of Deposit</u>	<u>Fair Value</u>	<u>Percent</u>	<u>Maturity in Less than 1 year</u>	<u>Maturity in 1- 10 Years</u>	<u>Maturity in Over 10 Years</u>	<u>Credit Rating</u>
Cash (FDIC Insured)	\$ 1,601,783	.35%- .40%	\$ 1,601,783			N/A
Certificate of Deposits (FDIC Insured)	156,949		156,949			N/A
Total Cash and Cash Equivalents	<u>\$ 1,758,732</u>		<u>\$ 1,758,732</u>			

**Investments**

District Policies and Legal and Contractual Provisions Governing Investments

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**Compliance with the Public Funds Investment Act**

The **Public Funds Investment Act** (Government Code Chapter 2256) contains specific provisions in the areas of investment practices, management reports, and establishment of appropriate policies. Among other things, it requires a governmental entity to adopt, implement, and publicize an investment policy. That policy must address the following areas: (1) safety of principal and liquidity, (2) portfolio diversification, (3) allowable investments, (4) acceptable risk levels, (5) expected rates of return, (6) maximum allowable stated maturity of portfolio investments, (7) maximum average dollar-weighted maturity allowed based on the stated maturity date for the portfolio, (8) investment staff quality and capabilities, (9) and bid solicitation preferences for certificates of deposit.

Statutes authorize the entity to invest in (1) obligations of the U.S. Treasury, certain U.S. agencies, and the State of Texas and its agencies; (2) guaranteed or secured certificates of deposit issued by state and national banks domiciled in Texas; (3) obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities and other political subdivisions of any state having been rated as to investment quality not less than an "A"; (4) No load money market funds with a weighted average maturity of 90 days or less; (5) fully collateralized repurchase agreements; (6) commercial paper having a stated maturity of 270 days or less from the date of issuance and is not rated less than A-1 or P-1 by two nationally recognized credit rating agencies OR one nationally recognized credit agency and is fully secured by an irrevocable letter of credit; (7) secured corporate bonds rated not lower than "AA-" or the equivalent; (8) public funds investment pools; and (9) guaranteed investment contracts for bond proceeds investment only, with a defined termination date and secured by U.S. Government direct or agency obligations approved by the Texas public Funds Investment Act in an amount equal to the bond proceeds. The Act also requires the entity to have independent auditors perform test procedures related to investment practices as provided by the Act. Saint Jo Independent School District is in substantial compliance with the requirements of the Act and with local policies.

Additional policies and contractual provisions governing investments for Saint Jo Independent School District are specified below:

*Credit Risk* To limit the risk that an issuer or other counterparty to an investment will not fulfill its obligations the District limits investments in obligations of the United States or its agencies and instrumentalities; direct obligations of the state of Texas or its agencies and instrumentalities; collateralized mortgage obligations directly issued by a federal agency or instrumentality of the United States, the underlying security for which is guaranteed by an agency or instrumentality of the United States; other obligations, the principal and interest of which are unconditionally guaranteed or insured by, or backed by the full faith and credit of, the state of Texas, the United States, or their respective agencies and instrumentalities; obligations of states, agencies, counties, cities, and other political subdivisions of any state rated as to investment quality by a nationally recognized investment rating firm not less than A or its equivalent; and bonds issued, assumed, or guaranteed by the state of Israel as per Texas Statute Government Code 2256.009(a). Additionally, the District authorizes investments in: certificates of deposit; fully collateralized repurchase agreements; certain securities lending programs; certain banker's acceptances; certain commercial paper; certain no-load market mutual funds; certain no-load mutual funds; guaranteed investment contracts; public funds investment pools; and certain corporate bonds.

*Custodial Credit Risk for Investments:* To limit the risk that, in the event of the failure of the counterparty to a transaction, a government will not be able to recover the value of investment or collateral securities that are in possession of an outside party the District requires counterparties to register the securities in the name of the district and hand them over to the District or its designated agent. This includes securities in securities lending transactions. All of the securities are in the District's name and held by the District or its agent.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Concentration of Credit Risk: To limit the risk of loss attributed to the magnitude of a government's investment in a single issuer, the District shall diversify in terms of investment instruments, maturity scheduling, and financial institutions to reduce risk of loss resulting from overconcentration of assets in a specific class of investments, specific maturity, or specific issuer.

Interest Rate Risk: To limit the risk that changes in interest rates will adversely affect the fair value of investments, the District requires the District requires any internally created pool fund group to have a maximum dollar weighted maturity of 180 days. The maximum allowable stated maturity of any other individual investment owned by the District shall not exceed one year from time of purchase. The Board may specifically authorize a longer maturity for a given investment, within legal limits.

Foreign Currency Risk for Investments: The District does not make investments that have foreign currency risk.

Saint Jo Independent School District has Texpool investment measured at the Net Asset Value (NAV) per Share (or its equivalent).

**B. PROPERTY TAXES**

Property taxes are levied by October 1 on the assessed value listed as of the prior January 1 for all real and business personal property located in the District in conformity with Subtitle E, Texas Property Tax Code. Taxes are due on receipt of the tax bill and are delinquent if not paid before February 1 of the year following the year in which imposed. On January 31 of each year, a tax lien attaches to property to secure the payment of all taxes, penalties, and interest ultimately imposed. Property tax revenues are considered available (1) when they become due or past due and receivable within the current period and (2) when they are expected to be collected during a 60-day period after the close of the school fiscal year.

**C. DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE**

Delinquent taxes are prorated between maintenance and debt service based on rates adopted for the year of the levy Allowances for uncollectible tax receivables within the General and Debt Service Funds are based on historical experience in collecting property taxes. Uncollectible personal property taxes are periodically reviewed and written off, but the District is prohibited from writing off real property taxes without specific statutory authority from the Texas Legislature.

**D. INTERFUND BALANCES AND TRANSFERS**

The composition of interfund balances as of August 31, 2017, is as follows:

<u>Receivable Fund</u>	<u>Payable Fund</u>	<u>Amount</u>
General Fund	Special Revenue Fund	\$ 21,254
	Total	<u>\$ 21,254</u>

Interfund transfers are defined as "flow of assets without equivalent flows of assets in return and without requirement of repayment." Interfund transfers for the year ended August 31, 2017, were as follows:

<u>Transfers From General Fund to:</u>	<u>Total</u>
Nonmajor Governmental Funds	\$ 25,820
Total Transfers	<u>\$ 25,820</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**E. DISAGGREGATION OF RECEIVABLES AND PAYABLES**

Receivables at August 31, 2017, were as follows:

	<u>Property Taxes</u>	<u>Other Governments</u>	<u>Due From Other Funds</u>	<u>Other</u>	<u>Total Receivables</u>
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>					
General Fund	\$ 190,046	\$ 473,716	\$ 21,254	\$ -	\$ 685,016
Nonmajor Governmental Funds	<u>-</u>	<u>28,172</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>28,172</u>
Total - Governmental Activities	<u>\$ 190,046</u>	<u>\$ 501,888</u>	<u>\$ 21,254</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>\$ 713,188</u>
Amounts not scheduled for collection during the subsequent year	<u>\$ 47,158</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 47,158</u>

Payables at August 31, 2017, were as follows:

	<u>Accounts</u>	<u>Salaries and Benefits</u>	<u>Due To Other Funds</u>	<u>Accrued Expenditures</u>	<u>Other</u>	<u>Total Payables</u>
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>						
General Fund	\$ 30,497	\$ 134,261	\$ -	\$ 2,735	\$ -	\$ 167,493
Nonmajor Gov. Funds	4,075	3,689	21,254	248	-	29,266
Internal Service Fund	10,532	-	-	-	-	10,532
Agency Service Funds	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>11,966</u>	<u>11,966</u>
Total - Gov. Activities	<u>\$ 45,104</u>	<u>\$ 137,950</u>	<u>\$ 21,254</u>	<u>\$ 2,983</u>	<u>\$ 11,966</u>	<u>\$ 219,257</u>

**F. CAPITAL ASSET ACTIVITY**

Capital asset activity for the District for the year ended August 31, 2016, was as follows:

	Primary Government				
	<u>Beginning Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Disposals</u>	<u>Adjustments</u>	<u>Ending Balance</u>
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>					
Land	\$ 198,477	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 198,477
Buildings and Improvements	6,863,169	118,252	-	-	6,981,421
Furniture and Equipment	1,179,793	22,078	-	-	1,201,871
Construction in Progress	<u>-</u>	<u>60,152</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>60,152</u>
Totals at Historic Cost	<u>8,241,439</u>	<u>200,482</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>8,441,921</u>
Less Accumulated Depreciation for:					
Buildings and Improvements	(3,983,160)	( 202,589)	-	-	(4,185,749)
Furniture and Equipment	<u>(735,352)</u>	<u>( 109,636)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(844,988)</u>
Total Accumulated Depreciation	<u>(4,718,512)</u>	<u>( 312,225)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(5,030,737)</u>
Governmental Activities Capital Assets, Net	<u>\$ 3,522,927</u>	<u>(\$ 111,743)</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 3,411,184</u>

Depreciation expense was charged to governmental functions as follows:

Instruction	\$ 141,033
School Leadership	1,023
Student (Pupil) Transportation	53,053
Food Services	17,867
Co-curricular/Extra-curricular Activities	64,204
General Administration	2,060
Plant Maintenance and Operations	19,295
Security and Monitoring Service	<u>13,690</u>
	<u>\$ 312,225</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**G. COMMITMENTS UNDER OPERATING LEASES**

Commitments under operating (noncapitalized) lease agreements for facilities and equipment provide for minimum future rental payments as of August 31, 2017 as follows:

Year Ending <u>August 31</u>	
2018	\$ 27,768
2019	23,940
2020	17,955
2021	-
2022	-
2023-2027	-
2028-2032	<u>-</u>
 Total Minimum Rentals	 \$ <u>69,663</u>
 Rental Expenditures in Fiscal Year 2017	 \$ <u>41,093</u>

**H. ACCUMULATED UNPAID VACATION AND SICK LEAVE BENEFITS**

A State minimum personal leave program consisting of five days per year of personal leave, with no limit on accumulation and no restriction on transfer among districts, is provided for District employees. All employees who are eligible for State personal leave also earn an additional five workdays of local sick leave per year. Local sick leave is cumulative subject to continuous employment with the District. The District has not recorded a liability for accumulated sick leave since the amount is not considered material.

Upon retirement certain employees based on local policy are eligible for reimbursement for state leave if retirement is voluntary, the employee provides written 120 day notice and has at least five continuous years of service with District. The employee shall be reimbursed for each day of unused state leave to a maximum of 40 days at a rate established by the Board. A summary of changes in the accumulated vacation leave liability follows:

	<u>Sick Leave</u>
Balance September 1, 2016	\$ -
Additions - New Entrants and Salary Increments	27,275
Deductions - Payments to Participants	<u>-</u>
Balance August 31, 2017	<u>\$27,275</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**I. DEFINED BENEFIT PENSION PLAN**

**Plan Description.** Saint Jo Independent School District participates in a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit pension that has a special funding situation. The plan is administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas (TRS). It is a defined benefit pension plan established and administered in accordance with the Texas Constitution, Article XVI, Section 67 and Texas Government Code, Title 8, Subtitle C. The pension trust fund is a qualified pension trust under Section 401(a) of the Internal Revenue Code. The Texas Legislature establishes benefits and contribution rates within the guidelines of the Texas Constitution. The pension's Board of Trustees does not have the authority to establish or amend benefit terms.

All employees of public, state-supported educational institutions in Texas who are employed for one-half or more of the standard work load and who are not exempted from membership under Texas Government Code, Title 8, Section 822.002 are covered by the system.

**Pension Plan Fiduciary Net Position.** Detailed information about the Teacher Retirement System's fiduciary net position is available in a separately-issued Comprehensive Annual Financial Report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information. That report may be obtained on the Internet at [http://www.trs.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr\\_2016.pdf](http://www.trs.texas.gov/TRS%20Documents/cafr_2016.pdf); by writing to TRS at 1000 Red River Street, Austin, TX, 78701-2698; or by calling (512) 542-6592. The information provided in the Notes to the Financial Statements in the 2016 Comprehensive Annual Financial Report for TRS provides the following information regarding the Pension Plan fiduciary net position as of August 31, 2016.

<u>Net Pension Liability</u>	<u>Total</u>
Total Pension Liability	\$171,797,150,487
Less: Plan Fiduciary Net Position	<u>(134,008,637,473)</u>
Net Pension Liability	<u>\$ 37,788,513,014</u>
 Net Position as percentage of Total Pension Liability	 78.00%

**Benefits Provided.** TRS provides service and disability retirement, as well as death and survivor benefits, to eligible employees (and their beneficiaries) of public and higher education in Texas. The pension formula is calculated using 2.3 percent (multiplier) times the average of the five highest annual creditable salaries times years of credited service to arrive at the annual standard annuity except for members who are grandfathered, the three highest annual salaries are used. The normal service retirement is at age 65 with 5 years of credited service or when the sum of the member's age and years of credited service equals 80 or more years. Early retirement is at age 55 with 5 years of service credit or earlier than 55 with 30 years of service credit. There are additional provisions for early retirement if the sum of the member's age and years of service credit total at least 80, but the member is less than age 60 or 62 depending on date of employment, or if the member was grandfathered in under a previous rule. There are no automatic post-employment benefit changes; including automatic COLAs. Ad hoc post-employment benefit changes, including ad hoc COLAs can be granted by the Texas Legislature as noted in the Plan description in (A) above.

**Contributions.** Contribution requirements are established or amended pursuant to Article 16, section 67 of the Texas Constitution which requires the Texas legislature to establish a member contribution rate of not less than 6% of the member's annual compensation and a state contribution rate of not less than 6% and not more than 10% of the aggregate annual compensation paid to members of the system during the fiscal year. Texas Government Code section 821.006 prohibits benefit improvements, if as a result of the particular action, the time required to amortize TRS' unfunded actuarial liabilities would be increased to a period that exceeds 31 years, or, if the amortization period already exceeds 31 years, the period would be increased by such action.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Employee contribution rates are set in state statute, Texas Government Code 825.402. Senate Bill 1458 of the 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature amended Texas Government Code 825.402 for member contributions and established employee contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 thru 2017. The 83<sup>rd</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2014 and 2015. The 84<sup>th</sup> Texas Legislature, General Appropriations Act (GAA) established the employer contribution rates for fiscal years 2016 and 2017.

<u>Contribution Rates</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2017</u>
Member	7.2%	7.7%
Non-Employer Contributing Entity (State)	6.8%	6.8%
Employers	6.8%	6.8%
District's 2017 FY Employer Contributions	\$ 46,228	
District's 2017 FY Member Contributions	\$ 142,319	
District's 2016 NECE On-Behalf Contributions	\$ 102,555	

Contributors to the plan include members, employers and the State of Texas as the only non-employer contributing entity. The State contributes to the plan in accordance with state statutes and the General Appropriations Act (GAA).

As the non-employer contributing entity for public education, the State of Texas contributes to the retirement system an amount equal to the current employer contribution rate times the aggregate annual compensation of all participating members of the pension trust fund during that fiscal year reduced by the amounts described below which are paid by the employers. Employers including public schools are required to pay the employer contribution rate in the following instances:

- On the portion of the member's salary that exceeds the statutory minimum for members entitled to the statutory minimum under Section 21.402 of the Texas Education Code.
- During a new member's first 90 days of employment
- When any part or all of an employee's salary is paid by federal funding sources or a privately sponsored source.

In addition to the employer contributions listed above, there are two additional surcharges an employer is subject to.

- When employing a retiree of the Teacher Retirement System the employer shall pay both the member contribution and the state contribution as an employment after retirement surcharge.
- When a school district does not contribute to the Federal Old-Age, Survivors and Disability Insurance (OASDI) Program for certain employees, they must contribute 1.5% of the state contribution rate for certain instructional or administrative employees; and 100% of the state contribution rate for all other employees.

**Actuarial Assumptions.** The total pension liability in the August 31, 2016 actuarial valuation was determined using the following actuarial assumptions:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2016
Actuarial Cost Method	Individual Entry Age Normal
Asset Valuation Method	Market Value
Single Discount Rate	8.00%
Long-term expected Investment Rate of Return	8.00%
Inflation	2.50%
Salary Increases Including Inflation	3.50% to 9.50%
Payroll Growth Rate	2.50%
Benefit Changes During the Year	None
Ad hoc Post Employment Benefit Changes	None



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The actuarial methods and assumptions are based primarily on a study of actual experience for the four year period ending August 31, 2014 and adopted on September 24, 2015.

**Discount Rate.** The discount rate used to measure the total pension liability was 8.0%. There was no change in the discount rate since the previous year. The projection of cash flows used to determine the discount rate assumed that contributions from plan members and those of the contributing employers and the non-employer contributing entity are made at the statutorily required rates. Based on those assumptions, the pension plan's fiduciary net position was projected to be available to make all future benefit payments of current plan members. Therefore, the long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was applied to all periods of projected benefit payments to determine the total pension liability. The long-term rate of return on pension plan investments is 8%. The long-term expected rate of return on pension plan investments was determined using a building-block method in which best-estimates ranges of expected future real rates of return (expected returns, net of pension plan investment expense and inflation) are developed for each major asset class. These ranges are combined to produce the long-term expected rate of return by weighting the expected future real rates of return by the target asset allocation percentage and by adding expected inflation. Best estimates of geometric real rates of return for each major asset class included in the Systems target asset allocation as of August 31, 2016 are summarized below:

Asset Class	Target Allocation	Real Return Geometric Basis	Long-Term Expected Portfolio Real Rate of Return*
<b>Global Equity</b>			
U.S.	18%	4.6%	1.0%
Non-U.S. Developed	13%	5.1%	0.8%
Emerging Markets	9%	5.9%	0.7%
Directional Hedge Funds	4%	3.2%	0.1%
Private Equity	13%	7.0%	1.1%
<b>Stable Value</b>			
U.S. Treasuries	11%	0.7%	0.1%
Absolute Return	0%	1.8%	0.0%
Hedge Funds (Stable Value)	4%	3.0%	0.1%
Cash	1%	-0.2%	0.0%
<b>Real Return</b>			
Global Inflation Linked Bonds	3%	0.9%	0.0%
Real Assets	16%	5.1%	1.1%
Energy and Natural Resources	3%	6.6%	0.2%
Commodities	0%	1.2%	0.0%
<b>Risk Parity</b>			
Risk Parity	5%	6.7%	0.3%
Inflation Expectations			2.2%
Alpha			1.0%
<b>Total</b>	<b>100%</b>		<b>8.7%</b>

\* The Expected Contribution to Returns incorporates the volatility drag resulting from the conversion between Arithmetic and Geometric mean returns.

**Discount Rate Sensitivity Analysis.** The following schedule shows the impact of the Net Pension Liability if the discount rate used was 1% less than and 1% greater than the discount rate that was used (8%) in measuring the 2016 Net Pension Liability.

	1% Decrease in Discount Rate (7.0%)	Discount Rate (8.0%)	1% Increase in Discount Rate (9.0%)
District's proportionate share of the net pension liability:	\$ 833,785	\$ 538,738	\$ 288,478

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**Pension Liabilities, Pension Expense, and Deferred Outflows of Resources and Deferred Inflows of Resources Related to Pensions.** At August 31, 2017, Saint Jo Independent School District reported a liability of \$538,738 for its proportionate share of the TRS's net pension liability. This liability reflects a reduction for State pension support provided to Saint Jo Independent School District. The amount recognized by Saint Jo Independent School District as its proportionate share of the net pension liability, the related State support, and the total portion of the net pension liability that was associated with Saint Jo Independent School District were as follows:

District's Proportionate share of the collective net pension liability	\$ 538,738
State's proportionate share that is associated with the District	<u>1,217,316</u>
Total	<u>\$ 1,756,054</u>

The net pension liability was measured as of August 31, 2016 and the total pension liability used to calculate the net pension liability was determined by an actuarial valuation as of that date. The employer's proportion of the net pension liability was based on the employer's contributions to the pension plan relative to the contributions of all employers to the plan for the period September 1, 2015 thru August 31, 2016.

At August 31, 2016 the employer's proportion of the collective net pension liability was .0014257% which was an increase (decrease) of .0000014% from its proportion of .0014243% measured as of August 31, 2015.

**Changes Since the Prior Actuarial Valuation** – There were no changes to the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

For the year ended August 31, 2017, Saint Jo Independent School District recognized pension expense of \$126,328 and revenue of \$126,328 for support provided by the State in the Government Wide Statement of Activities.

At August 31, 2017, Saint Jo Independent School District reported its proportionate share of the TRS's deferred outflows of resources and deferred inflows of resources related to pensions from the following sources: (The amounts shown below will be the cumulative layers from the current and prior years combined.)

	Deferred Outflows of Resources	Deferred Inflows of Resources
Differences between expected and actual actuarial experience	\$ 8,447	\$ 16,086
Changes in actuarial assumptions	16,420	14,933
Difference between projected and actual investment earnings	45,620	-
Changes in proportion and difference between the employer's contributions and the proportionate share of contributions	<u>152,009</u>	<u>35</u>
Total as of August 31, 2016 measurement date	\$ 222,496	\$ 31,054
Contributions paid to TRS subsequent to the measurement date	<u>46,228</u>	<u>-</u>
Total	<u>\$ 268,724</u>	<u>\$ 31,054</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The net amounts of the employer's balances of deferred outflows and inflows of resources related to pensions will be recognized in pension expense as follows:

Year ended August 31:	Pension Expense Amount
2018	\$ 80,675
2019	\$ 34,447
2020	\$ 63,545
2021	\$ 32,211
2022	\$ 22,791
Thereafter	\$ 4,001

**J. HEALTH CARE COVERAGE - RETIREES AND ACTIVE EMPLOYEES**

**Retiree Health Care Coverage**

**Plan Description.** Saint Jo Independent School District participates in the Texas Public School Retired Employees Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care), a cost-sharing multiple-employer defined benefit post-employment health care plan administered by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. TRS-Care provides health care coverage for certain persons (and their dependents) who retire under the Teacher Retirement System of Texas. The statutory authority for the program is Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575. Texas Insurance Code Section 1575.052 grants the TRS Board of Trustees the authority to establish and amend basic and optional group insurance coverage for participants. The TRS issues a publicly available financial report that includes financial statements and required supplementary information for TRS-Care. That report may be obtained by writing to the TRS Communications Department, 1000 Red River Street, Austin, Texas 78701, by phoning the TRS Communications Department at 1-800-223-8778, or by downloading the report from the TRS Internet Website, [www.trs.state.tx.us](http://www.trs.state.tx.us) under the TRS Publications heading.

**Funding Policy.** Contribution requirements are not actuarially determined but are legally established each biennium by the Texas Legislature. Texas Insurance Code, Sections 1575.202, 203, and 204 establish state, active employee, and public school contributions, respectively. The Contribution Rate for the State was 1.00% for 2015, 2016 and 2017. The contribution rate for the district was 0.55% for each of these three years. The contribution rate for active employees was 0.65% of the district payroll for each of the three years. Per Texas Insurance Code, Chapter 1575, the public school contribution may not be less than 0.25% or greater than 0.75% of the salary of each active employee of the public school. For staff members funded by federal programs, the federal programs are required to contribution 1.0 %.

**Contributions.** Contributions made by the State on behalf of the District are recorded in the governmental funds financial statements as both revenue and expenditures. State contributions to TRS made on behalf of the District's employees as well as the District's required contributions and federal grant program contributions for the years ended August 31, 2017, 2016 and 2015 are as follows:

	<u>2017</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
Required District Contributions	\$ 10,166	\$ 9,845	\$ 9,887
Actual District Contributions	10,166	9,845	9,887
Federal Contributions	691	1,138	1,106
State Contributions	15,865	15,584	15,979
Employee Contributions	12,014	11,636	11,685

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**Medicare Part D.** The Medicare Prescription Drug, Improvement, and Modernization Act of 2003, effective January 1, 2006, established prescription drug coverage for Medicare beneficiaries known as Medicare Part D. One of the provisions of Medicare Part D allows for the Texas Public School Retired Employee Group Insurance Program (TRS-Care) to receive retiree drug subsidy payments from the federal government to offset certain prescription drug expenditures for eligible TRS-Care participants. For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2017, 2016, and 2015 the subsidy payments received by TRS-Care on-behalf of the District were \$5,589, \$6,783 and \$7,356 respectively. The information for the year ended August 31, 2017 is an estimate provided by the Teacher Retirement System. These payments are recorded as equal revenues and expenditures in the governmental funds financial statements of the District.

**Active Employee Health Care Coverage**

**Plan Description.** The District participates in TRS Active Care sponsored by the Teacher Retirement System of Texas and administered through Aetna and Caremark (pharmacy). TRS-Active Care provides health care coverage to employees (and their dependents) of participating public education entities. Optional life and long-term care insurance are also provided to active members and retirees. Authority for the plan can be found in the Texas Insurance Code, Title 8, Subtitle H, Chapter 1579 and in the Texas Administrative Code, Title 34, Part 3, Chapter 41. The plan began operations on September 1, 2002. This is a premium-based plan. Payments are made on a monthly basis for all covered employees.

During the year ended August 31, 2017, the District paid premiums of \$225 per month per employee to the Plan. Employees, at their option, authorized payroll withholdings to pay premiums for dependents. All premiums were paid to a third party administrator, acting on behalf of the licensed insurer. The plan was authorized by Article 3.51-2, Texas Insurance Code and was documented by contractual agreement.

**K. CHANGES IN LONG-TERM LIABILITIES**

Long-term activity for the year ended August 31, 2017, was as follows:

	<u>Beginning</u> <u>Balance</u>	<u>Additions</u>	<u>Reductions</u>	<u>Ending</u> <u>Balance</u>	<u>Due Within</u> <u>One Year</u>
<b>Governmental Activities:</b>					
Other Liabilities:					
Vested Retirement Payable	\$ -	\$ 27,275	\$ -	\$ 27,275	
Net Pension Liability	<u>\$ 503,471</u>	<u>80,564</u>	<u>45,297</u>	<u>\$ 538,738</u>	
Total Other Liabilities	<u>\$ 503,471</u>	<u>\$ 107,839</u>	<u>\$ 45,297</u>	<u>\$ 566,013</u>	
Total Governmental Activities Long-term Liabilities	<u>\$ 503,471</u>	<u>\$ 107,839</u>	<u>\$ 45,297</u>	<u>\$ 566,013</u>	

**L. UNAVAILABLE/UNEARNED REVENUE**

Unavailable revenue at year end consisted of the following:

	<u>General Fund</u>
Property Tax Revenue	<u>\$ 142,888</u>
Total Unavailable Revenue	<u>\$ 142,888</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**M. DUE FROM STATE AGENCIES**

The District participates in a variety of federal and state programs from which it receives grants to partially or fully finance certain activities. In addition, the District receives entitlements from the State through the School Foundation and Per Capita Programs. Amounts due from federal and state governments as of August 31, 2017, are summarized below. All federal grants shown below are passed through the TEA and are reported on the combined financial statements as Due from State Agencies.

<u>FUND</u>	<u>STATE</u> <u>ENTITLEMENTS</u>	<u>FEDERAL</u> <u>GRANTS</u>	<u>OTHER</u>	<u>TOTAL</u>
General Fund	\$ 452,090	\$ -	\$ 21,626	\$ 473,716
Nonmajor Governmental	-	28,172	-	28,172
Total	<u>\$ 452,090</u>	<u>\$ 28,172</u>	<u>\$ 21,626</u>	<u>\$ 501,888</u>

**N. REVENUE FROM LOCAL AND INTERMEDIATE SOURCES**

During the current year, revenues from local and intermediate sources consisted of the following:

	<u>General</u> <u>Fund</u>	<u>Special</u> <u>Revenue</u> <u>Fund</u>	<u>Internal</u> <u>Service</u> <u>Fund</u>	<u>Private</u> <u>Purpose</u> <u>Trust Fund</u>	<u>Total</u>
Property Taxes	\$2,191,368	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2,191,368
Penalties, Interest and Other Tax- related Income	23,077	-	-	-	23,077
Investment Income	10,519	-	-	477	10,996
Gifts and Bequest	32,145	-	-	5,974	38,119
Insurance Recovery	67,297	-	-	-	67,297
Food Sales	-	22,788	-	-	22,788
Co-curricular Student Activities	3,278	-	-	-	3,278
Athletic Activities	10,944	-	-	-	10,944
Interfund Service-Workers Comp.	-	-	13,843	-	13,843
Other	13,765	5,787	-	3	19,555
Total	<u>\$ 2,352,393</u>	<u>\$ 28,575</u>	<u>\$ 13,843</u>	<u>\$ 6,454</u>	<u>\$ 2,401,265</u>

**O. SELF INSURED WORKERS COMPENSATION POOL**

The District participates in a self-insured Worker's Compensation Pool administered through a third party. The District provides fixed cost payments to the pool and accumulates reserves to cover the District's loss fund amount each year. Fixed costs for the year ended August 31, 2017 were \$8,163 and the District's loss fund maximum was \$14,562.

The accrued liability for Worker's Compensation self-insurance of \$10,532 includes incurred but not reported claims. This liability reported in the fund at August 31, 2017 is based on the requirements of Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement No. 10, which requires that a liability for claims be reported if information prior to issuance of the financial statements, indicates that it is probable that a liability has been incurred as of the date of the financial statements, and the amount of the loss can be reasonably estimated. Because actual claim liabilities depend on such complex factors as inflation changes in legal doctrines, and damage awards, the process used in computing the liability does not result in necessarily an exact amount. The liability booked was the undiscounted estimate of the actuary at August 31, 2017.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 NOTES TO THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
 YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**P. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES**

The District participates in grant programs, which are governed by various rules and regulations of the grantor agencies. Costs charged to the respective grant programs are subject to audit and adjustment by the grantor agencies; therefore, to the extent that the District has not complied with the rules and regulations governing the grants, refunds of any money received may be required and the collectability of any related receivable may be impaired. In the opinion of the District, there are no significant contingent liabilities relating to compliance with the rules governing the respective grants; therefore, no provision has been recorded in the accompanying combined financial statements for such contingencies.

**Q. JOINT VENTURE-SHARED SERVICE ARRANGEMENTS**

The District participates in a shared services arrangement for Special Education with six other school districts. Although 10.03% of the activity of the shared services arrangement is attributable to the District's participation, the District does not account for revenues or expenditures in this program and does not disclose them in these financial statements. The District neither has a joint ownership interest in fixed assets purchased by the fiscal agent, Nocona ISD, nor does the district have a net equity interest in the fiscal agent. The fiscal agent is neither accumulating significant financial resources nor fiscal exigencies that would give rise to a future additional benefit or burden to Saint Jo Independent School District. The fiscal agent manager is responsible for all financial activities of the shared services arrangement. Presented below are the revenues and expenditures attributable to the District's participation

	State & Local	Federal
Revenues:	<u>\$ 43,861</u>	<u>\$ 54,895</u>
Expenditures:	<u>\$ 43,861</u>	<u>\$ 54,895</u>

**R. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

Management has evaluated the impact of all subsequent events of the District through financial statement issuance, and has determined that there are no other subsequent events requiring recognition or disclosure in the financial statements.

**S. RELATED ORGANIZATIONS**

The District has no material related organizations as defined by *Governmental Accounting Standards Board Statement Number 14*.

**REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY  
INFORMATION**

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
BUDGET AND ACTUAL - GENERAL FUND  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
REVENUES:					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 2,286,782	\$ 2,385,229	\$ 2,352,393	\$ (32,836)
5800	State Program Revenues	642,997	642,997	688,443	45,446
5900	Federal Program Revenues	89,890	89,890	71,809	(18,081)
5020	Total Revenues	3,019,669	3,118,116	3,112,645	(5,471)
EXPENDITURES:					
Current:					
0011	Instruction	1,619,761	1,678,211	1,610,867	67,344
0012	Instructional Resources and Media Services	36,341	36,341	33,907	2,434
0013	Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	5,100	7,100	5,387	1,713
0021	Instructional Leadership	5,400	5,400	5,314	86
0023	School Leadership	230,773	236,773	234,371	2,402
0031	Guidance, Counseling and Evaluation Services	57,186	57,186	51,794	5,392
0033	Health Services	9,250	9,250	6,338	2,912
0034	Student (Pupil) Transportation	72,103	75,103	62,299	12,804
0035	Food Services	3,173	3,173	3,173	-
0036	Extracurricular Activities	190,404	210,763	183,380	27,383
0041	General Administration	231,099	233,099	224,365	8,734
0051	Facilities Maintenance and Operations	370,632	497,973	447,874	50,099
0052	Security and Monitoring Services	8,974	9,974	9,309	665
0053	Data Processing Services	23,936	23,936	23,347	589
Capital Outlay:					
0081	Facilities Acquisition and Construction	100,000	167,297	127,752	39,545
Intergovernmental:					
0091	Contracted Instructional Services Between Schools	354,587	354,587	234,899	119,688
0093	Payments to Fiscal Agent/Member Districts of SSA	53,000	53,000	43,838	9,162
0099	Other Intergovernmental Charges	60,000	60,000	39,862	20,138
6030	Total Expenditures	3,431,719	3,719,166	3,348,076	371,090
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(412,050)	(601,050)	(235,431)	365,619
OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):					
8911	Transfers Out (Use)	(31,701)	(31,701)	(25,820)	5,881
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	(443,751)	(632,751)	(261,251)	371,500
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	2,284,086	2,284,086	2,284,086	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ 1,840,335	\$ 1,651,335	\$ 2,022,835	\$ 371,500



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF THE DISTRICT'S PROPORTIONATE SHARE OF THE NET PENSION LIABILITY  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

EXHIBIT G-2

	FY 2017 Plan Year 2016	FY 2016 Plan Year 2015	FY 2015 Plan Year 2014
District's Proportion of the Net Pension Liability (Asset)	0.0014257%	0.0014243%	0.0007566%
District's Proportionate Share of Net Pension Liability (Asset)	\$ 538,738	\$ 503,471	\$ 202,098
State's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) associated with the District	1,217,316	1,262,179	1,070,375
Total	\$ 1,756,054	\$ 1,765,650	\$ 1,272,473
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 1,790,113	\$ 1,797,681	\$ 1,757,542
District's Proportionate Share of the Net Pension Liability (Asset) as a Percentage of its Covered-Employee Payroll	30.10%	28.01%	11.50%
Plan Fiduciary Net Position as a Percentage of the Total Pension Liability	78.00%	78.43%	83.25%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the information on this schedule be data from the period corresponding with the periods covered as of the measurement dates of August 31, 2016 for Year 2017, August 31, 2015 for Year 2016 and August 31, 2014 for 2015.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, only three years of data are presented this reporting period. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF DISTRICT CONTRIBUTIONS  
 TEACHER RETIREMENT SYSTEM OF TEXAS  
 FOR FISCAL YEAR 2017

EXHIBIT G-3

	2017	2016	2015
Contractually Required Contribution	\$ 46,228	\$ 44,017	\$ 41,944
Contribution in Relation to the Contractually Required Contribution	(46,228)	(52,908)	(52,115)
Contribution Deficiency (Excess)	\$ -0-	\$ (8,891)	\$ (10,171)
District's Covered-Employee Payroll	\$ 1,848,296	\$ 1,790,113	\$ 1,797,681
Contributions as a Percentage of Covered-Employee Payroll	2.50%	2.46%	2.33%

Note: GASB 68, Paragraph 81 requires that the data in this schedule be presented as of the District's respective fiscal years as opposed to the time periods covered by the measurement dates ending August 31 for the respective fiscal years.

Note: In accordance with GASB 68, Paragraph 138, the years of data presented this reporting period are those for which data is available. "The information for all periods for the 10-year schedules that are required to be presented as required supplementary information may not be available initially. In these cases, during the transition period, that information should be presented for as many years as are available. The schedules should not include information that is not measured in accordance with the requirements of this Statement."

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
NOTES TO REQUIRED SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

*Changes of benefit terms.*

There were no changes of benefit terms that affected measurement of the total pension liability during the measurement period.

*Changes of assumptions.*

There were no changes in the actuarial assumptions or other inputs that affected measurement of the total pension liability since the prior measurement period.

## **COMBINING AND OTHER SCHEDULES**

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING BALANCE SHEET  
 NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program	
<b>ASSETS</b>					
1110	Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 1,094
1240	Receivables from Other Governments	9,231	-	-	4,583
1000	Total Assets	<u>\$ 9,231</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,677</u>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>					
2110	Accounts Payable	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 4,075
2160	Accrued Wages Payable	2,121	-	-	1,568
2170	Due to Other Funds	6,896	-	-	-
2200	Accrued Expenditures	214	-	-	34
2000	Total Liabilities	<u>9,231</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>5,677</u>
<b>FUND BALANCES</b>					
Assigned Fund Balance:					
3590	Other Assigned Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
3000	Total Fund Balances	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>
4000	Total Liabilities and Fund Balances	<u>\$ 9,231</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 5,677</u>

255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	270 ESEA VI, Pt B Rural & Low Income	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Literacy Achievement Academies	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 11,832	\$ 12,926
13,693	665	-	-	-	28,172
<u>\$ 13,693</u>	<u>\$ 665</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 11,832</u>	<u>\$ 41,098</u>
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 4,075
-	-	-	-	-	3,689
13,693	665	-	-	-	21,254
-	-	-	-	-	248
<u>13,693</u>	<u>665</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>29,266</u>
-	-	-	-	11,832	11,832
-	-	-	-	11,832	11,832
<u>\$ 13,693</u>	<u>\$ 665</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ -</u>	<u>\$ 11,832</u>	<u>\$ 41,098</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES AND CHANGES IN  
 FUND BALANCES - NONMAJOR GOVERNMENTAL FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	211 ESEA I, A Improving Basic Program	224 IDEA - Part B Formula	225 IDEA - Part B Preschool	240 National Breakfast and Lunch Program
<b>REVENUES:</b>				
5700 Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 22,788
5800 State Program Revenues	-	-	-	513
5900 Federal Program Revenues	56,052	200	1,427	84,522
5020 Total Revenues	56,052	200	1,427	107,823
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>				
Current:				
0011 Instruction	56,052	200	1,427	-
0013 Curriculum and Instructional Staff Development	-	-	-	-
0035 Food Services	-	-	-	133,643
6030 Total Expenditures	56,052	200	1,427	133,643
1100 Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	-	-	-	(25,820)
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>				
7915 Transfers In	-	-	-	25,820
1200 Net Change in Fund Balance	-	-	-	-
0100 Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
3000 Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -

255 ESEA II,A Training and Recruiting	270 ESEA VI, Pt B Rural & Low Income	410 State Textbook Fund	429 Literacy Achievement Academies	461 Campus Activity Funds	Total Nonmajor Governmental Funds
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 5,787	\$ 28,575
-	-	19,608	350	-	20,471
13,693	33,391	-	-	-	189,285
13,693	33,391	19,608	350	5,787	238,331
13,693	33,391	19,608	-	8,476	132,847
-	-	-	350	-	350
-	-	-	-	-	133,643
13,693	33,391	19,608	350	8,476	266,840
-	-	-	-	(2,689)	(28,509)
-	-	-	-	-	25,820
-	-	-	-	(2,689)	(2,689)
-	-	-	-	14,521	14,521
\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 11,832	\$ 11,832



SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF NET POSITION  
 PRIVATE PURPOSE TRUST FUNDS  
 AUGUST 31, 2017

	816 H. D. Field Scholarship Fund	817 Van Harris Scholarship Fund	818 Presbyterian Scholarship Fund	819 Gloria Phillips Scholarship
<b>ASSETS</b>				
Cash and Cash Equivalents	\$ 226	\$ 74	\$ 900	\$ 2
Restricted Assets	55,500	5,000	75,564	-
Total Assets	<u>55,726</u>	<u>5,074</u>	<u>76,464</u>	<u>2</u>
<b>NET POSITION</b>				
Restricted for Scholarships	<u>55,726</u>	<u>5,074</u>	<u>76,464</u>	<u>2</u>
Total Net Position	<u>\$ 55,726</u>	<u>\$ 5,074</u>	<u>\$ 76,464</u>	<u>\$ 2</u>

---

820 Local Scholarship Fund	Total Private Purpose Trust Funds
\$ 25,647	\$ 26,849
-	136,064
<hr/> 25,647	<hr/> 162,913
 25,647	 162,913
<hr/> \$ 25,647	<hr/> \$ 162,913

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 COMBINING STATEMENT OF REVENUES, EXPENSES AND CHANGES IN FUND NET POSITION  
 PRIVATE PURPOSE TRUST FUNDS  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

	816 H. D. Field Scholarship Fund	817 Van Harris Scholarship Fund	818 Presbyterian Scholarship Fund	819 Gloria Phillips Scholarship
<b>ADDITIONS:</b>				
Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 194	\$ 518	\$ 267	\$ 251
Total Additions	<u>194</u>	<u>518</u>	<u>267</u>	<u>251</u>
<b>DEDUCTIONS:</b>				
Other Operating Costs	<u>400</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>500</u>
Total Deductions	<u>400</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>500</u>	<u>500</u>
Change in Net Position	(206)	18	(233)	(249)
Total Net Position - September 1 (Beginning)	<u>55,932</u>	<u>5,056</u>	<u>76,697</u>	<u>251</u>
Total Net Position - August 31 (Ending)	<u>\$ 55,726</u>	<u>\$ 5,074</u>	<u>\$ 76,464</u>	<u>\$ 2</u>

820 Local Scholarship Fund	Total Private Purpose Trust Funds
\$ 5,224	\$ 6,454
<u>5,224</u>	<u>6,454</u>
5,550	7,450
<u>5,550</u>	<u>7,450</u>
(326)	(996)
<u>25,973</u>	<u>163,909</u>
<u>\$ 25,647</u>	<u>\$ 162,913</u>

# **REQUIRED T.E.A. SCHEDULES**

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF DELINQUENT TAXES RECEIVABLE  
 FISCAL YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Last 10 Years Ended August 31	(1)	(2)	(3)
	Tax Rates		Assessed/Appraised Value for School Tax Purposes
	Maintenance	Debt Service	
2008 and prior years	Various	Various	\$ Various
2009	1.170000	0.110000	162,338,516
2010	1.170000	0.100000	178,448,346
2011	1.170000	0.080000	172,249,280
2012	1.170000	0.075000	211,319,759
2013	1.170000	0.060000	268,037,967
2014	1.170000	0.060000	316,550,894
2015	1.170000	0.057000	269,409,291
2016	1.170000	0.040000	241,305,372
2017 (School year under audit)	1.170000	0.000000	189,726,325
1000 TOTALS			

(10) Beginning Balance 9/1/2016	(20) Current Year's Total Levy	(31) Maintenance Collections	(32) Debt Service Collections	(40) Entire Year's Adjustments	(50) Ending Balance 8/31/2017
\$ 14,655	\$ -	\$ 157	\$ 17	\$ (1,171)	\$ 13,310
2,762	-	50	5	-	2,707
3,555	-	67	6	-	3,482
10,654	-	50	3	-	10,601
8,157	-	447	29	-	7,682
21,495	-	502	26	(2)	20,965
29,171	-	6,840	351	(1,267)	20,713
24,147	-	4,875	237	(647)	18,388
59,489	-	15,113	517	2,042	45,901
-	2,219,798	2,162,020	-	(11,480)	46,298
<u>\$ 174,085</u>	<u>\$ 2,219,798</u>	<u>\$ 2,190,121</u>	<u>\$ 1,191</u>	<u>\$ (12,525)</u>	<u>\$ 190,046</u>

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
 SCHEDULE OF REVENUES, EXPENDITURES, AND CHANGES IN FUND BALANCE  
 BUDGET AND ACTUAL - CHILD NUTRITION PROGRAM  
 FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

Data Control Codes	Budgeted Amounts		Actual Amounts (GAAP BASIS)	Variance With Final Budget Positive or (Negative)	
	Original	Final			
<b>REVENUES:</b>					
5700	Total Local and Intermediate Sources	\$ 24,000	\$ 24,000	\$ 22,788	\$ (1,212)
5800	State Program Revenues	500	500	513	13
5900	Federal Program Revenues	81,000	81,000	84,522	3,522
5020	Total Revenues	105,500	105,500	107,823	2,323
<b>EXPENDITURES:</b>					
0035	Food Services	137,201	137,201	133,643	3,558
6030	Total Expenditures	137,201	137,201	133,643	3,558
1100	Excess (Deficiency) of Revenues Over (Under) Expenditures	(31,701)	(31,701)	(25,820)	5,881
<b>OTHER FINANCING SOURCES (USES):</b>					
7915	Transfers In	31,701	31,701	25,820	(5,881)
1200	Net Change in Fund Balances	-	-	-	-
0100	Fund Balance - September 1 (Beginning)	-	-	-	-
3000	Fund Balance - August 31 (Ending)	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -



**REPORTS ON  
COMPLIANCE, INTERNAL CONTROLS  
AND  
FEDERAL AWARDS**

# FREEMON, SHAPARD & STORY

*Certified Public Accountants*

## **Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting and on Compliance and Other Matters Based on an Audit of Financial Statements Performed in Accordance With *Government Auditing Standards***

### Independent Auditors' Report

Saint Jo Independent School District  
Drawer L  
Saint Jo, Texas 76265

We have audited, in accordance with the auditing standards generally accepted in the United States of America and the standards applicable to financial audits contained in *Government Auditing Standards* issued by the Comptroller General of the United States, the financial statements of the governmental activities, each major fund, and the aggregate remaining fund information of Saint Jo Independent School District, as of and for the year ended August 31, 2017, and the related notes to the financial statements, which collectively comprise Saint Jo Independent School District's basic financial statements, and have issued our report thereon dated November 27, 2017.

### **Internal Control Over Financial Reporting**

In planning and performing our audit of the financial statements, we considered Saint Jo Independent School District's internal control over financial reporting (internal control) to determine the audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances for the purpose of expressing our opinions on the financial statements, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of Saint Jo Independent School District's internal control. Accordingly, we do not express an opinion on the effectiveness of Saint Jo Independent School District's internal control.

A *deficiency in internal control* exists when the design or operation of a control does not allow management or employees, in the normal course of performing their assigned functions, to prevent, or detect and correct, misstatements on a timely basis. A *material weakness* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A *significant deficiency* is a deficiency, or a combination of deficiencies, in internal control that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance.

Our consideration of internal control was for the limited purpose described in the first paragraph of this section and was not designed to identify all deficiencies in internal control that might be material weaknesses or significant deficiencies. Given these limitations, during our audit we did not identify any deficiencies in internal control that we consider to be material weaknesses. However, material weaknesses may exist that have not been identified.

### **Compliance and Other Matters**

As part of obtaining reasonable assurance about whether Saint Jo Independent School District's financial statements are free from material misstatement, we performed tests of its compliance with certain provisions of laws, regulations, contracts, and grant agreements, noncompliance with which could have a direct and material effect on the determination of financial statement amounts. However, providing an opinion on compliance with those provisions was not an objective of our audit, and accordingly, we do not express such an opinion. The results of our tests disclosed no instances of noncompliance or other matters that are required to be reported under *Government Auditing Standards*.

### **Purpose of this Report**

The purpose of this report is solely to describe the scope of our testing of internal control and compliance and the results of that testing, and not to provide an opinion on the effectiveness of the entity's internal control or on compliance. This report is an integral part of an audit performed in accordance with *Government Auditing Standards* in considering the entity's internal control and compliance. Accordingly, this communication is not suitable for any other purpose.

Freemon, Shapard & Story

A handwritten signature in cursive script that reads "Freeman, Shapard + Story".

November 27, 2017

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SCHEDULE OF FINDINGS AND QUESTIONED COSTS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

**I. Summary of the Auditor's Results:**

- |                                                                                                                          |                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. Type of auditor's report issued on the financial statements of the auditee.                                           | <u>Unmodified</u> |
| 2. Significant deficiencies in internal controls disclosed by the audit of the financial statements.                     | <u>None</u>       |
| a. Significant deficiencies that were material weaknesses.                                                               | <u>None</u>       |
| 3. Noncompliance material to the financial statements of the auditee disclosed by the audit of the financial statements. | <u>None</u>       |
| 4. Significant deficiencies in internal controls over major programs disclosed by the audit of the financial statements  | <u>None</u>       |
| a. Significant deficiencies that were material weaknesses.                                                               | <u>None</u>       |
| 5. Findings disclosed by the audit of the financial statements which the auditor is required to report.                  | <u>None</u>       |
| 6. Under the guidelines of OMB Circular A-133, a Single Audit was not required for the year ended August 31, 2017.       |                   |

**II. Findings relating to the financial statements, which are required to be reported in accordance with *Generally Accepted Government Auditing Standards*.**

None.

**III. Findings and questioned costs for state and federal awards**

None.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
SUMMARY SCHEDULE OF PRIOR AUDIT FINDINGS  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

The prior year audit disclosed no audit findings.

SAINT JO INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CORRECTIVE ACTION PLAN  
FOR THE YEAR ENDED AUGUST 31, 2017

<u>Finding Number</u>	<u>Contact Person</u>	<u>Corrective Action Plan</u>	<u>Anticipated Date Corrected</u>
---------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------------	---------------------------------------

The audit disclosed no audit findings.

SCHOOLS FIRST QUESTIONNAIRE

Saint Jo Independent School District

Fiscal Year 2017

SF2	Were there any disclosures in the Annual Financial Report and/or other sources of information concerning nonpayment of any terms of any debt agreement at fiscal year end?	No
SF4	Was there an unmodified opinion in the Annual Financial Report on the financial statements as a whole?	Yes
SF5	Did the Annual Financial Report disclose any instances of material weaknesses in internal controls over financial reporting and compliance for local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF6	Was there any disclosure in the Annual Financial Report of material noncompliance for grants, contracts, and laws related to local, state, or federal funds?	No
SF7	Did the school district make timely payments to the Teachers Retirement System (TRS), Texas Workforce Commission (TWC), Internal Revenue Service (IRS), and other government agencies?	Yes
SF8	Did the school district not receive an adjusted repayment schedule for more than one fiscal year for an over allocation of Foundation School Program (FSP) funds as a result of a financial hardship?	Yes
SF10	Total accumulated accretion on CABs included in government-wide financial statements at fiscal year-end.	
SF11	Net Pension Assets (1920) at fiscal year-end.	
SF12	Net Pension Liabilities (2540) at fiscal year-end.	\$ 538,738
SF13	Pension Expense (6147) at fiscal year-end.	

Financial Advisory Services  
Provided By:

**SAMCO CAPITAL MARKETS, INC.**